

759. e 14.

A NOTABLE HISTORIE
of the Saracens.

Briefly and faithfully describing
the originall beginning, continu-
ance and successe aswell of the Saracens, as also
of Turkes, Souldans, Amalukes, Assassines,
Tartarians and sophians. With a discourse
of their Affaires and Actes from the
byrthe of Mahomet their first
prophet and founde
er for 700 yeres
space.

VVherunto is annexed a Compendious
Chronycle of all their yeerely exploitcs,
from the sayde Mahomet's time
till this present yeere of
grace. 1575.

Drawen out of Augustine Curio
and sundry other good Au-
thours by Thomas
Newton.

Imprinted at London by Wil-
liam How, for Abraham Veale.

1575.



To the Ryghte honorable
the Lorde Charles Howarde,
Baron of Effyngham, and
Knight of the most Noble Or-
der of the Garter.

RYghte Honorable:
Callinge to remembrance
what streict accoumpt eue-
rie Man particularlie at
the last generall Audite,
is enioyned to yeeld for time here bestow-
ed, I haue somewhat in discharge of my duty
that waye, according to the rate and mea-
sure of my small Talent, traueiled to
bringe to light for the benefite of my Coun-
treymen this historicall Discourse of Sar-
racens, Turks and other Reprobates of the
same stampe and Lyuerey, in hope that the
same to your Honour and others, of ripe
iudgement thyrstinge after such needefull
knowledge, shall bee deemed labour and time
not all together yll spent. Which matter al-
though it required the cunninge hande of a
skilfuller Woorkeman, for the better polis-
shing and bringing thereof into good frame
and

The Epistle

and order, yet the dilygent endeoure of
suche as doe their vttermoste seemeth (in
the meane whyle) not to bee reiected. For
God bestoweth his Gifts and Benefites di-
uerselye (some haue more and some lesse)
whiche although by Arithmeticall pro-
portion they seeme very vnequall, yet beinge
Geometricallye examyned, respected and
waighed, they iumpe in a most euen equalty.
Herein as in a Myrrour is set down, how,
when & by whom, this pestilent Generation
was first set abroche, what successe in their
Affaires euer synce they haue had, and if
wee wyll not by others harmes take warning,
what curtesye is to bee looked for at their
hands, whē and where soeuer they can espye
any occasiō or oportunitie to put in practise
their bloudy tyranny. They were (indeede)
at the first very far of from our Clyme &
Region, and therefore the lesse to be fear-
red, but now they are euen at our doores and
ready to come into our Houses, yf our pen-
itent heartes doe not the sooner procure at
the mercifull bandes of God, an vnytie,
peace.

Dedicatorie.

peace and concord among the Princes, Po-
tentates and People of that litle porcion of
Chrystendome yet left, which through diuis-
sion, discord and ciuile dissention hath from
time to time enticed and brought this Baby-
lonian Nabugadnezar and turkish Pharaο
so neere vnder our noses. The pitifull state
wherof although your L. is not now to learn
yet for others sake, not so rype in Turkishe
garboyles, I know your Honour according
to the wonted generositie of your noble na-
ture wil at my hands cherefully accept, as an
earnest peny of my loyal heart to your L.
most addicted: whō I beseech God with
that moste vertuous and honorable
Ladie your wife to blesse with
all spirituall benedictions,
prosperous health and
daylye increase of
much Honour.

At London the xii. of May. 1575.

Your good Lordships
most humble at commaundment,

Thomas Newton.

The Authours

Preface.

MAny a time and often, considering and debating with my selfe, the actwarde course of this changeable world, among other things I haue bene greatly desyring to know, what the very & chief cause should be, of the subuersion and ruine, from time to time, of al mightie kyngdomes: And againe of the setting vp and aduancement of manie obscure persones of base degree and parentage to most high honors and dignities. For when I througely consider and call to remembrance the alteration and decay of the Romane Empire, and the manifold calamities that haue happened to noble and puyssaunt kyngdomes in times past, I well see, that dissolute life, ambitio and discord of Rulers amonge themselves hath from time to time bene the chief & originall cause thereof. Inso much that by reading oue of olde Monumentes and Histories, thinges long agoe atchieued and done. I perceaue many Empires haue ben planted and constituted, many Nations subdued, many kyngdomes with long continuance firmly established and most assured peace and tranquillitie among the Communaltie conserued by temperaunce and sobrietie, but chiefly and
B specially

The Preface.

pecially by ciuill concord and mutuall amity. Wherefore, both reason, & dayly examples enforce me to think, that Wealth, Riches, strength and skillfull pollicie in warlyke affaires without concord and goodwyl of the people hurteth many times, but profiteth almost neuer. Whereas concord and beneuolence (euen without wealth and rychesse) be of great force and of themselves able to doo very much. Therefore, they which neglected the sauegard, quietnesse and comoditie of their subiectes (whereby, goodwyl is both purchased and also nourished,) and wholly yeelded themselves to Ambition and desire of souereignty (bestowing al their studies and cogitations onely to enrich and bring themselves to hye estate among their owne people, desiring rather to be feared of them then of their enemies) were in the end vnprofitable to themselves and pernicious to their countrey. Contrarywise, they that so arine themselves with the vnfayned loue and goodwyl of their owne people and subiectes, that they might both be tenderly and intirely beloued of them, and also be terrible and dreadfull to the enemy abroad: those (I say) were they, which notably benefited both themselves and their common wealth. And if we would peruse and rip vp the ancient beginnings of al kingdoms, and thoroughly consider their fyrst originall, wee

The Preface.

wee shall finde that so many of them as long flourished, were by most honest Artes and wayes at the fyrst gotten, and by the best orders of gouernment constituted. For it is wel enough knowne, that at the beginning, the name of a king (which alwaies was a name inostre holle and venerable) was geuen and attributed to those that had done best seruice and been most meritorious to their countrey, whom the people for their common profite and vtilitie created kinges and Soueraignes ouer them. For when as the sacred worde of God was not yet amonge men acknowledged, no religyon reuerenced, nor any ciuill order regarded, when no man tooke any respect to laborsfull matrymonie, or to any certaine procreation of Children, and the due administration of iustice and lawes with the profites therof not once heard of, much lesse executed: when men after a brutish sorte lyued abroad in the woods and open fieldes, wholly drowned in errour and blind ignorance, abusing their strength and power onely to the satisfyinge of their owne sensuall affections and beastly lustes: what mans power was so great, or who was able with al the strength he had to gather together these sauage and rude persones lurking in woods & cabines abroad, into one fellowship: & to perswade the to be obedient & consoynable to his comandements. Certes

The Preface.

wee muste needes confesse, that this reducing of them from their fyrste vnmannerly rudenesse, to honeste order and comelinesse, was not brought to passe by force and violence, but by wisdom, equity, iustice, courteous dealing and liberall benefites bestowed vpon them all generallye, whereby the hartes of the people were rauished and as it were with a certain bond of beneuolence allured to haue them in admiration, and to beare vnto them an earnest zeale of duty, full good wyll. And although at the fyrste, they seemed after a sort (because of the strangenesse thereof) to be halfe vnwyllynge, yet at length by meanes of benefites receaued, and other liberal curtesses, together with an vpright equitie in euery respect obserued, they brought them into order and ready to consent vnto euery thinge that seemed honest and profitable. By these politike meanes, Saturne the aunciētest founder of Rome reigned firste in Armenia, and escaped the conspiracye and force of the mightiest kings of Babilon by nothinge so much, as by his iustice and equitie and the assured goodwill of his owne people, and by their onely help, fleeing the furie and crueltie of Jupiter, obtained and waime a new kingdome in Italy. By this way, Romulus the other founder of Rome, of a poore and beggarly Shepheard, was aduanced to the degree of a king.

In

The Preface.

In lyke manner were Numa and Tarquinus Priscus of straungers and priuate persons, made kings in the same place. By such good will and affection of his Souldiers, Alexander the Great conquered all the East. By con corde, the Greeques victoriously augmented and enlarged their dominions: by concord, the common wealth of the Carthaginians grewe to bee moste mightye: the same con corde made the Romanes, Lordes ouer al Lands, and conquerours of al foraine nations. In this bond of concord the Sarracens a weake and slender rable of Merynants at the fyrst, being ioyned and linked together, ouercame and possessed verie many prouinces belöging to y^e Romane empire: & by this meanes y^e power of the Turkes at the fyrst & euer since hath increased. But Insolency, Ambition and Discord hath ben the subuersion of all kingdomes, mightye Empires and populous common wealthes. For when princes (neglecting and forsaking those trades and waies by which their kingdomes were at the fyrst constituted) thinke Money and wealth, to be the chief defence, and as it were the Sinewes and stayes of their kingdomes, when any secret hatred and hate burninge enkindleth betweene them and their people, then do they hazard and endaunger both themselves their Royallines and subiectes to the spoyle of the ene-

B iii

mye.

The Preface.

my. for nature hath thus ordayned, that as we feele & perceauē others to be affected towards vs, we also are affected towards the: & Plato his saying is well known concerning the same matter who writeth that as the princes & rulers in a common welth are, such commonly be the people and Citizens of the same. Therefore no man ought to maruel, why those Princes which set more by their own private lucre and gayne then by the publique comoditie of their Realme, are many times but slenderly beloued of their subiectes: and that all their Officers vnder them by their euill example, are more careful to enrich their owne Coffers then to further the common wealth of their country. Thus mens harts being diuersly bent and their good wils alienated one from another, the common wealth consequently goeth to wracke & confusion. These were the causes, why the Emperie was first translated from the Chaldeyes to the Assyrians, from the Assyrians to the Medians, from the Medians to the Persians and last of all from the Persians to the Macedonians. Discord was the overthrow and disparcelling of that famous and large Monarchie left by Alexander the Great, while his successours (not content every man with his owne Territory) quarrelled among themselves for the whole Monarchie. Discord abated and tamed the whole power
and

The Preface.

and common wealth of the Greeques: by discord and ciuill warres, the Romane state was destroyed and brought almoste to nothing: and agayne the ciuill diuision of the Greeques amonge themselves was the only cause that the flourishing empire of Constantinople was brought vnder the miserable yoke and slauey of a Nation moste barbarous. Discord was the vtter vndoing and defacing of the Sarracens Empire, as in this history it shall playnly appeare: and the same plague doth at this day so infect and trouble all Christendome that I feare (and I beseech God my feare may be without effect) least wee shall to late rue and lament either the vtter subuersion or at least, the miserable oppression thereof. What do wee meane therefore: seeing Ambition and her daughter Discord haue euer bene the causes of so great calamities and mischieues, why doo we thus runne headlong vpon the Swordes point, and cut one anothers throat: why haue we such delight in ciuill warres and domesticall murder: why doo wee not (alas for pitie that our mindes should be so much blinded and bewitched) lay asyde all private grudges and controuersies which ought rather to be decided by equitie and the infallible lawe of God, then with war and effusion of Christian blood: why doo wee not rather bende
all

The Preface.

all our force and power against the professed enemies of Christianitie, & cōteinners & destroyers of all humanitie, religion and learning: These warres (I say) which are deuided into many partes and factions among vs, one conspiringe an others bane and thyrsting after his brothers blood, will in the end bring all Christendome to vtter ruine and wofull desolation. Which if they would ioyne in one and liue together in Christian league, no doubt, Constantinople might be agayn recovered and annexed to the Romane Empire, Grecia and a great number of Christian cuntries now lyuyng in perpetual mourning, & pitiful slavery might bee deliuered out of the thraldome of vn-sufferable tyrants, that Sathanical crew of Turkish lurdens might be expelled and driuen to trudge out of all Europa, and the sincere profession of christian religion there estones planted and truely acknowledged. Paraduventure some wyll cast doubt, and object, that this our mortal foe is not neere hand, but must be sought out (as aforesaid) in farre cuntries, that they must passe sundry aduentures ouer many perilous Seas, that they must goe a great way beyonde all Europa, and set foote into ASIA and Syria by dangerous places, vnknown waies suspect countreies and fierce people. But behold, even at our doores and ready to come
into

The Preface.

into our houses, we haue this arrogant and bragging helhound, triumphyng ouer vs, laughyng at our misfortunes, reioycinge to see vs thus to lye together by the eares, and gapyng in hope shortly to enioy our goods and Signiories. O dolefull and dangerous times. O corrupt and wyllfull maners. In times past, one Peter an Heremite beyng but a poore seely soule, was able with exhortyng wordes and orations to perswade three hundred thousand men to put on armour against the Sarracens, and to procure innumerable Gentlemen & Potentates with all the power they were able to make, to march against them, & to bring them as far as into Asia, where they valiantly conquered and wanne from the Sarracens many of their Kingdomes and Provinces. For the people in those daies were of themselves so willing to aduenture their liues in Christs quarell against the blasphemers of his name, that without any stipend or wages (godly zeale so pricked them forward) they tooke in hand such long Expeditions and weary voyages: and while Kinges and Rulers were geuen either to rest and riotte, or els busyed with ciuill and domesticall warres, they carried their weapons into farre Regions to fight against the Infidels and miscreant people. But now wheras our most mightye and the same most vnnmercifull Enemye the
C great

The Preface.

great Turke is ready euery day to spyll our bloud and to work our confusion, possessing & hauing alredy vnder his iurisdiction many of þ Chyistian Prouinces, to some others layng batterye and siege: and hop yng ere it be long, to spoyle & ouerrunne the rest, and albeit that Chyristendome hath Maximilian an Emperour moste prudent and wyse, yet neuerthelesse, by the sinister perswasions, and deuillish counsailes of some sedicious personnes w^{ch} slea and kill one an other. Whiche thing I considering, and greatly lamentyng the state wherein Chyristendome presently standeth, albeit that I being but one man, and such a one, that lackyng both strength & health, am able in person to doe no good in the exploites of martiall affaires: yet to the intent I might stirre vp and kindle a desire and goodwyl in many others which are better hable, to repulse this our common danger, by such examples as are in histories registered and wryten, I haue heere taken vppon mee orderly to describe and set out the Actes of the Sarracens, and Turkes, buried almost in the rusty dongeon, of cankerd obliuion: that we seeyng by what meanes and sleightes they haue increased, and by what folies and oversightes our power hath diminished, may now at length decline and eschue the lyke. This whole Historie breefly comprysinge the whole Discourse of their raignes

The Preface.

raignes and conquestes, collected aswell out of many Greeke, Constantinopolitan, and Latine Authours, as out of the Chronicles of the Arabians & Moores, is deuided into three Bookes. The first containeth the natiuitie, education, raigue and continuance of Doynger Mahomet and the beginning of the Saracens, with the successe and increase of their Empire euen tyll it was at the highest, for two hundredeth yeeres space. The seconde is continued from the first inclynation tyll the beginning of the destruction and laste ende thereof, contayninge also the space of two hundredeth yeeres. The third brievely comprehendeth the finall end of it, and the original beginning of the Turkishe Empire, (which succeeded the Saracenicall Domination) till Othoman the first Emperour of Turkes which intreateth of their acts, for the space of three hundredeth yeeres. So that this Historie taketh his beginning at the byrth of Mahomet, which was five hundred & sixty yeeres after the incarnation of our Sauour Christ, and reacheth vnto y^e yeere one thousand & three hundredeth. As for the seuerall Acts of Othoman and other Emperours that succeeded hym, we haue heere omitted, because they be seuerally written and described by many others. But of that argument which wee in these three Bookes declare and comprehend,

C ii

there

The Preface.

there is none, neither amonge the Latines nor yet the Greeques (that I know) which hath compiled and made any seuerall Historye. Which labour of mine, if I may vnderstand to be well lyked and allowed, by the iudgment of the honest and learned sorte, I wyll heerafter aduenture to take in hande other matters of greater waight and importance.



The first Booke. I

Wherin is contained their first beginning and originall, with the successe and encreasing of theyr Empire.



I am purposed to write an Historye concerning the Actes of the Saracens, atchieued as wel in the East as in the West partes of the world: first because they were greate and renoumed ouer the face of the whole Earth and brought all things out of good state into tumultuous bzoyl and confuse disozder, and also because this power of theirs encreased, thzough the disozde and dissention of the Chzistians: that we thereby taking example, may plainely perceiue and learne what bolones and strength, our ciuill warring and inward variance among our selues giueth to the aduersaries and foes of Chzistianitie. And that we no longer in this sorte offer our thzozates willingly to be cut by them, which desire nothing moze then our blood and destruction. For first of al, this is well ynough knowen, that the Romane Emppze (which thzoughe concozde temperance and valiauntnes surmounted and grew to such high Maiestie and estate, that all nations almost in the world were obedienciaries and subiect vnto it) when the Citizens being once lulled in to much ease, and dzonken with superfluitie of riches and wealth began to addict themselves to riot and ambition (the verie causes that ouerthzew it, when it once began to decline with his owne sway and bignesse, and many strived for title of the Crowne) receiued at the handes of none, such annoyance and calamitie as of the
C. iij. Sara-

Saracens. For although the Gothes most vnnmercifully and beastly destroying and making hauocke of the auncient Monuments of the Romane valiaunce and worthinesse, were the first that triumphed ouer them, being the people which earst had banquished and conquered all other nations: Although Attila King of the Hunnes, like a most raging swifte streame spoyled, ouerrunne and destroyed all where euer he came, from the Riphæan to the Pyrene Mountaines: Although the Lumbards occupied and forcibly enioyed a great portion of Italy, as the Frankes breaking out of Germanie into Gallia also did: yet their raignes and dominations in straunge Countreyes either continued not long, or else at least wise, lying vnder a more gentle and reasonable Climate, chaunged their former conditions, acknowledged religion and the August Emperre of the soueraigne Cæsars. But the Saracens because they woulde seeme to be subduers and ouerthrowers both of the Romane Empire and of all Christian religion also, violently breaking and issuing out of Arabia, despoiled and wasted the most noble parts of Asia, which in so many sharpe stormes and troubles some garboyles of most fierce people euer before remained free and vntouched, quite abolishing in the same all the studies of good letters and liberall Sciences and (which is most of all) utterly defacing and inhibiting the true worshipping of God and Christian religion. And not only infected the Provinces of Asia but also almoste all Affrica and the moste parte of Spaine with barbarous rites, mystie errors, blinde ignorance, and with a most deuilish, absurde and detestable religion of their owne. And from thence making sundry Roads into Italy, Greece and Fraunce lamentably afflicted and laid wast the same, and by continuance & sufferance haue planted such a huge Emperre, & at this day (being in Anno. 1575. that is to say 900. yeeres and aboue since it first beganne, it dayly threate,

threateneth our confusion and is dreadfull to all Christendome. For the Turkes who nowe enioy all their dominions, haue receiued from them as next heires vnto them, both their Religion and Kingdomes: and yet to this day in Affrica, some of the mere lyne of the Saracens be of great power and authoritie. But before we go any further to the declaration & discouerie of their Acts & gouernment, we must firste a little speake of the originall Pedegree of the first founder and authour of their damnable Secte. All Arabie is deuided into thre partes, wherof one is called Petreia, hauing his name of an olde auncient tolon in it, called Petra, the second is called Deserta, and the thirde Felix or Sabæa. Petreia hath on the West side Egypt and is separated from it, firste by the Mount Casius and then by wast wilderness: on the North, it hath Iurie and Palestina: on the East, Arabia, Deserta: and on the South the innermost part or arme of the Arabian Goulph called Sinus Arabicus. Deserta, wherin the Citie Scen (otherwise called Scenitis) stonde, boundeth on the South vpon the Mountaines of Arabia Felix, on the North, it hath Mesopotamia, and on the East the River Euphrates. Arabia Felix runneth a long betwene the two bosomes of the Sea, the Arabian and the Persian, being almost on euerie side enuironed with water like an Island. It hath on the North Petreia and Deserta, on the West the Arabian Gulphe, on the East the Persian Gulphe, and on the South the redde Sea. I finde that these Regions were inhabited by foure kindes of people, that is to wit, by the auncient Arabians, which were descended from Arabus, Sabus and Petreus the sonnes of Cures and the nephewes of Cham, of whom the thre Arabies had their names as Arabia Deserta of Arabus, Arabia, Sabæa (which is also called Felix) of Sabus and Petreia of Petreus (as witnesseth Berosus Chaldeus.) Then of the Ismaelites, which were descended from

Arabie.

Arabians are the offspring of Ismael.

Africa.

Esau inhabited part of Arabia.

from Ismaell the Sonne of Abraham by his handmayde Agar, of whom a parte of the Countrey, called Agarena and the Town Agarenum (which in Strabo are corruptly read Ararena and Agranum) had their first beginning and denomination: as that part called Petreia was called Nabathæa of Nabath, & the people Cædrei of Cædar the Sonnes of the same Ismael. The thirde people came and descended of the Sonnes of Ketura, Abrahams second wife, which possessed a great part of Arabia Fœlix, specially that portion which lyeth toward the redde Sea. They also made Colonies and vnder Cities in Lybia, and peopled the same with inhabitants of their owne lineage and nation, whereupon afterward (as Iosephus witnesseth) the Cuntrey was called Affrica, of Ophre the Sonne of Mandanes, and Prophet to Abraham by his wife Ketura. The fourth kinde, toke their originall beginning of Esau the Sonne of Isaac, who inhabited the partes of Arabia Petreia next vnto Iurie, and of him the people in Arabia Petreia, are of Plinie and Ptolomæus called by the name of Saracens. For Isaac, Esau his father, was the Sonne of Abraham by his wife Sara. And they were called Saracens, both because they might thereby shew and testifie, that they were descended of the lyne of Sara, who was Mystrisse, and not of Agar the handmaid as the Ismaelites were: and also that they might be discerned and known from the Iewes, who also had the verie same parentes and were proceeded out of the same stocke and Progenie. Among al these, the people Scenitæ which inhabited Arabia Deserta, were most valiaunt and warlike, hauing no habitation nor houses to dwel in, but wandred abroade & lay in Tentes in the open fieldes. These insolently bragged and made their auant, that they were of most auncientie, and contended with all others for the nobilitie of their race. There aide and helpe, the Romane Emperours in their warres oftentimes vsed.

used. The Arabians euer had many ordinaunces and Rites, such as the Hebrewes had, and do yet to this day retaine and keepe the same: for (as Herodotus and Diodorus two auncient Historiographers affirme) they euer vsed circumcisiõ, and kept the same order of their Tribes and families that the Iewes did: and accompt it a heynous offence that a woman should be married to a man of any other Tribe and familie then shee her selfe is, and likewise for a man to take to wife a woman of another lineage. They inuiolablie keepe the nobilitie of their race and Pedagreu, so that none but of the noblest sort should raigne ouer them. Neither hath one the regiment and gouernaunce ouer all, but euerie Tribe to haue their proper King, after whom, his owne sonne shoulde not succede in the kingdome, but the first that was bozne of the seede of a right noble man and woman, after he were saluted King, was kept and brought vp as heyre apparaunt to the Crowne. A people naturally and generally geuen to thefte and robberte, as all others commonly are which dwell in hoate Countreies. Many kinds of religion was vsed among them: for some worshipped Christ, of whose nature, deitie, & omnipotencie at that time, whence this our Historie taketh his beginning (as in all other places at that time also) there were diuerse sectes and opinions. Some obserued the Rites and Ceremonies of the Iewes: some honoured the Sunne and Moone, some certain trees, some Serpentes, some a Towre called Alcaba, which they belæued and thought was builded by Ismael, some one thing and some another. In the time of these so great garboyles and diuersities in religions, and among suche blockishe and rude people, was Mahomet bozne at Itra-ripe a towne of Arabia Deserta, belonging to Mecca, being by his fathers side of the auncient line of Corah the sonne of Esau, or (as some say) of Cædar the sonne of Ismael, in the moneth of Februarie, and in the yære after the

Mahomet.

the incarnation of Chyist (as they say) 560. whose father was named Abedela & his mother Emma a Lew bozne, both poze folkes and of base parentage. By meanes whereof (his father beyng an Ismaelite and his mother a Lew) he was in his tender age by them instructed and taught both the rites of the Hebrewes and the manner of wooshipping that the Gentiles vsed. His Parentes dyed while he was but yet a tender and younge ladde, so that then he was committed to the charge and custodie of one Salutelib, his vncle by the fathers syde. And whē he came to mans stature he was taken prysoner of the Scenites, which were (as befoze was shewed) the fiercest and warlikest people in all that Countrey, and lyued altogether by robberies, and by them was he solde to a ryche Cobbe one Abdimoneples, an Ismaelite. Who quickly perceiving his prompt wit and thzoughly vnderstanding his impudent nature thought him to be a fit instrument to make his factour into other Cuntries about his traffique of merchandize, and so vsed oftentimes to send him out of Palestina where he dwelte, into Egypt. Which trade of life, Mahomet the space of many yeres exercising, gotte great acquaintance and crepte highly in fauour with the Hebrews, Christians and Gentiles. This Mahomet was of a meane stature, bigge headed, somewhat broune complexioned, chēerefully countenaunced and liuely coloured, a long bearde, and yet not hoare : because alwayes as it beganne to ware graye, with oyntmentes he altered it : his visage and loke was graue and portly, pretending a kynde of Palestie ioynd wpth gentlenesse and curtesie, hys legges very well praportioned, his bodie in goryng or mouyng pleasaunt and gentle, and lyke (as they terme it) to the course of a styll runnyng Ryuer, in talke verie curteous, in mynde and body both stoute, stronge and venturous, quicke and prompte of witte, but the same (as Salust wyiteth of Catiline) wicked and disposed

disposed to all mischiese, bolde, hardie, and suche a one that cared for no perilles. Whereof hee gaue once a manyfest example, for beyng mounted vppon a marueilous fierce and vntamed Horse (in the pzeence and sight of sundrie his friendes) he so spoured and galloped him, that all the beholders, seeyng him in suche great perill, earnestly desyzed him to alyght. Vnto whom wpth very amiable countenance and pleasaunt language, he answered, that the Horse was lyke vnto the Sea, doyng them thereby to vnderstande, that he toke no lesse pleasure and delectation in that praucing then if hee were in a Shippe vppon the Sea. Also hee was fickle mynded and double in all hys doynges, as the infinite rable of Lawes one cleane contraryng another, by him made, doe manyfestly witnesse : whiche thyng caused great varietie and diuerse sortes of sectes in hys Religion : hee was also a deepe counterfeytor and dissembler in euerye matter, but by nature verie eloquent withall.

Hys ambitious and haultie mynde, gaped wpthout measure. after promotion and authoritie. In so muche that consydering in hys mynde this great varietie of Sectes, hee was merueilously enflamed with a desyre to establishe and make one manner of religion, and to take vnto him as well the Soueraigntie of Emprze, as also of diuine honour. Whereof he was put in greate hope, by reason of the great sedicion and disorde of the Christians, the corruption of manners, and the want of warlike discipline. Moreover hee was grealy animated by the peruerse and deuilshe Counsell of one Sergius a Monk, who beeyng exiled and expelled oute of Constantinople, for mayntainyng the Heresie of the Arrians fled into Arabie, and vsed oftentimes to come to the house of Abdimoneples

neples, Mahomets maister, and entirely loued Mahomet for the singular dexteritie that he conceived to be in his wit and towardnes. Wherefore as soon as his maister Abdimoneples was dead, leaving behind him no Children, his wife Hadigia, being then widow, a woman of fiftie yeeres of age, and lesse sole heyre of all her husbandes Landes, Goods and Cattells, took her seruant Mahomet to husband. Now, being in possession of the widow and all her substance & by meanes thereof grown to great wealth, he often fell grouel on the ground, forming and froathing at the mouth (for he had the falling sickness) and laye in a horrible extasie or distraction of minde, which his wife took very heauily and cursed her fortune, in that shee had so lothsomely matched her selfe. She therfore to appease her griefe and to make her from great agonie to leape to sodaine ioye, tolde her that the same happened vnto him by the operation of the Spirite of God himselfe, who appeared vnto him and reuealed certaine things, which he should pronounce and shewe to the people, touching the law of Moses and of Christ. For (quod he) our mortall bodies being subiect to corruption are not hable to sustaine and abyde the glorious and glittering sight of God, whereby his bodie was in a manner at such times bereft and seperated from his mind. Which wordes the olde trotte believing, as she that tenderly loued him for his lustie coage and beautifull age, beganne now not to loue him as a husband, but to worship and reuerence him as a holy man and a diuine Prophete highly in Gods fauour, and to blaze his holines abroad among her Companions and Gossippes. In so much that when she dyed, she not onely left him wealthie in goods and possessions (for she made him heyre of all) but also in great veneration and credite among the common people for an opinion of sanctitie which was thought to be in him. For which cause, Buback the chiefeest and in greatest authority

ritie among all of that parte of Arabie, and of the same Tribe that Mahomet was, gaue his daughter Aissa to him in marriage, when he was but yet thirtie yeeres of age. Puffed vp with pride because of this new affinitie, and for the great abundance of wealth left vnto him by his other wife, he openly professed himselfe to be the messenger of God and a Prophete, and to teach the people a new kind of religion, patched and gathered together out of the erroneous Schismes and hereticall dreames of all Sectes. For he taught and commaunded Circumcision, Baptisme, and abstinence from Swines fleshe & wyne. He instituted a generall fast to be kept one whole month in the yeere, and that no meate for that space shoulde be eaten in the day tyme, but onely in the night. He affirmed, that there were but thre Prophetes, that is to wit, himself, Moses and Christ, and that Christ was not God, with an innumerable rable of most blasphemous opinions contained in his filthy Alcorane. Which assertions and opinions were of many at the first derided & flouted at, in so much that they accounted him no better the lunatique and distraught of his right wittes. But when that he had perswaded and allured all his Allvantes and the familie of Buback which bore great sway and authority, yea and many of the common people also to credite and leane to his Secte, the Magistrates of Mecca, perceiving that this new dosage and commotion would breede a scab in the common wealth, if the inconuenience like to ensue thereby, were not speedily prevented, and the impudencie of the man by rigour repressed, (for he slanderously would inueigh and openly raile vpon Princes) determined with them selues, to lay handes vpon him and to put him to death. Mahomet hauing vnderstanding of their intents and mindes, fled out of Mecca: whom many of his kinnsfolkes, Allies, Friends and Clientes, (who were thoroughly perswaded that he was such a one in dede, as

Alcorane is
a Booke
concerning
Mahomettes
Law.

he had professed and woulde seeme to bee) folowed. And from this yere, which was after the Nativite of our Lord and Saviour Christ. 593. yeres, the Arabians do reckon their yeres: calling this, the yere of Legira, which is to say the yere of flight or transmigration. Mahomet therefore seeing such a great multitude to favour and stick to him, putting more trust in his power then he did before, made unto them an Oracion, in effect as followeth.

Oracion of Mahomet.

How earnest I have bene and what desire I have alwayes had to proclaim, advance and publish that law, which hath bene unto me revealed by the Archangell and Messenger of Almighty God Gabriel, with commaundement to teach the same to all mortall wyghtes, both God himselfe knoweth and you most deare friends can witness. For I never spared any labour, never refused any danger, never any miseries or perillous extremitie, where I thought my painfull travaile might be availeable or redound to the benefite and soules health of all people, and where without disturbance and molestation I might conveniently execute the charge and office to mee committed and enioyned from the mouth of God. All which I have done to this ende, that I myght reclayme and call home the people runnyng a stray from their wicked wayes, to a holy & sincere integritie of life: and out of the dungeon of Hell, (whither they runne headlonge,) bring them backe into the joyes of the celestiall Kingdome: following herein the steppes and bountifullnes of God him selfe, whose message and ministerie we in earth do execute. Who when as all mankinde through Adams transgression and faulte, was corrupted and fallen into the handes of the Devill, yet of his mere mercy vouchsafed to deliver and save his people, as before he had promised to our father Abraham: that is to wit, by appointing unto them a law, whereby they might obtaine everlasting

lasting lyfe and saluation. And therfore first he sent Moses, to lay the first foundations and beginnynges of this doctrine, and to call them for feare of everlastyng payne, and damnation, to a newnesse and amendment of lyfe. But when the Lawe of Moses little profyted that way, he sent Iesus Christ, by gentler wayes and meanes to allure and wyne them, and to perswade them to lyve in the service and obedience of God. Now, mankind being againe so much depraved and gone a straie, that there is no certaine nor constant Religion among them, no discipline, no order nor honest maners, but all out of square and forlorne: he hath enioyned me (whom even from the beginning of the world he had made choyse of and predestinated for that purpose) to this office and function, that I should recure extreme euilles with extreme remedies, and with fire and sword cut off, all iniquitie and make havoc of all them that once should dare to againe say or open their mouth against this law: & that I should enlarge the Kingdome of God & constitute a more sacred & a more imperiall common wealth on earth, then ever any hath heretofore ben, for who is so blind, which seeth not, that unlesse we (whom God hath appointed to y office) do set to our helping handes to redresse these so great mischieses, all mankind shall shortly perishe: for mans nature withoute a Lawe (which in so great varietie and licentiousnes of life, can be none nor stand in any force) must needs most grievously sinne and offende. But howe shall we make and constitute any wholesome Lawe to them that are unwilling to lyve vnder any, and despise all godly order? What spightfull reproches and slanderous reportes, we that are carefull and diligent to accomplishe thys Commission and commaundemente of Almighty God, do sustayne at theyr hands, you most louing friends and companions have scene, and howe they pursue after vs as after wylde Beastes to haue our innocent blood.

But

But happie are you and blessed, whom God hath chosen
to be as ministers and helpers vnto me in the exploits,
and atchieuing of these so great mysteries and affayres,
whose diuine will it is, that you should not only be par-
takers & Coheires with mee of eternal felicitie in the lyfe
to come, but also here in this world shoulde bee enriched
with great wealth & possessions, the which vndoubtedly if
you shew your selues men and constantly persist in faith
you shall shortly enjoy, by subduing innumerable Nati-
ons and conquering most wealthie Countries. For (vn-
doubtedly) it is the good will and pleasure of God, that all
those Countries and heapes of wealth, shall be yours,
which now wicked men, enemies and aduersaries to
this law doe wrongfully possesse. That all these things
shall thus happely succede, both the wickednesse of our
aduersaries, which God will not suffer any longer to es-
cape unpunished, and your trustie ayde and balauntnes
(most worthy friendes and felowes) yea and the most in-
fallible oracles of Almighty God do put vs in hope most
assured. Wherefore if you desire to be partakers of the
kingdome of Heauen, and of so great rycheffe and glozy
vpon Earth, it is meete and expedient that you all swear
and do homage vnto me, that must be your Captaine and
Kingleader.

When he had thus made an ende, the chiefe Prin-
ces and Rulers of the people and namely Zaid the
Sonne of Zuzara, Aomar and all the rest one after an o-
ther with their swordes drawn, promised by a soleinne
Oth to allow of none other law, but that which Mahomet
should make: in the defence and setting out wherof, they
then and there protested, at all assaies when neede should
require, to spend their life and bloud. This ended, Maho-
met againe commaunding them to keepe silence, kneeled
down on his knees a pretty while, as though he had patter-
red ouer som mumbling meditaciōs, & afterwards with a
loude

loude voyce vttered these wordes folowing.

Now (most couragious champions) make your sel-
ues readie to battaile looke that you want neither wea-
pons nor stomacke to wyne our purpose withall, wee
haue the victorie most sure already in our handes. Wee
bold the things which you haue often desired and wished
for, Richesse, Glozy, Renowne and perpetual felicitie are
besoze our eyes. God hath set the besoze you as rewardes
for your valiant and victorious seruice: your owne vali-
aunce, the excellencie of the cause, and all the things aboue
named ought moze to stirre by your hartes and picke
you forward then any Oracion that I can make.

After he had thus spoken, he appointed tenne Capi-
taines ouer the people, chosen out of the noblest in byrth
and chiefest in dignitie among the rest, and such as were
allyed vnto him by marriage, and them did he appoint in-
to Ensignes and Bands. The names of which capitaines
were these: Vbequar, Omar, Ozmen, Alifric, Talaus,
Azubeir, Zadin, Zaedine & Abuobeid, & so he marched
in battail aray toward the Citie of Mecca. The Magistra-
tes of the Citie vnderstanding thereof, made out a power
against him, which encounting with Mahomet his Host,
discomfited and put them all to flight. Wherefore for the
space of foure yeres after, Mahomet neuer durst make
any proser to besiege that Citie any moze. Notwithstan-
ding, he ceased not continually with Oracions in the open
fieldes and Countrey villages, to moue and stirre by
the people to sedition, by meanes whereof he also caused
certain vpzores and tumultes among the Scenites, which
acknowledged for their Lordes and Soueraignes the
Romane Emperours. When once againe he marched
with a freshe supply of moe souldiours against Mecca,
where he was againe repulsed and mysted his purpose:
and two yeres after he againe the thirde time attempted
the same and sped as he had done twise besoze. In this
C. meane

The first Booke

meane while, Heraclius the Emperour perceiuing the youthfull sort of the Scenites to begin mutyne & seditiō, for y better quieting therof, dispatched & sent a great number of thē (vnder the coulour of warfare) into far Countries. Where raigned at y time in Persia a King named Cosdroes, who had married y daughter of Maurice y Emperour called Marie, at whose inflāce & persuasiō he was contented to be Baptized: and so long as his father in law liued, vsed himself most friendly toward all y Chzistians & was vnto them very curteous & liberall. But after that he was traiterously slaine by Phocas, who succeeded hym in the Empire, Cosdroes detesting y disloyal treacherie & falsehood of them which had elected such a wicked man, as Phocas, polluted with the bloudie murder of his liege Lord and Soueraigne to be their Prince, reputing them as Accessories to the same horrible acte and conspiracie, prepared a great armie at the instigation and procurement of his wife to reuenge the death of his said father in Law. And the more was he emboldened so to do, because he wel ynough perceiued Heraclius (for Phocas was slaine within a while after) to be altogether lulled in securitie and to lye quietly at home without attempting any thing against the Barbarous Nations which with fire, & sword on every side despoiled Italie and the Romane Empyre. Whereupon with a huge and populous armie he enuaded the frontiers of the Empyre, and subduyng by fyne force all the South partes of Asia, entred into Egypt and tooke Alexandria: and yet not contented, went further and conquered Carthage, with all Affrica. And when he had taken good order for the fortifying of that Countrey with strong garrisons, he retzied backe to Alexandria, wastting Syria and Iurie. Heraclius being not a litle nettled with these iniurious dealings of Cosdroes, sent vnto him for peace: which when he coulde not obtaine at his handes, rather enforced and driuen by necessitie, then

Of the Saracen Historie. 8

drawne to it by any goodwyl in himselfe leuied an army, in which he also had retayned the Arabian Scenites, with whom some say that Mahomet was, and that in a battell wherein Cosdroes side was discomfited, he was sore wounded by a common Souldier named Turcus. And when Heraclius had many times ioynd battell with Cosdroes, and in diuers conflicts put him to the foyle, at length he so much crushed his power y he was glad to fly beyonde the riuer Tigranes, where he proclaymed his yonger sonne called Medarces, Successour and beyer apparaunt to his Crowne, dishereting and not regardinge his elder sonne Sirochis, a younge Gentleman of great hope and towardnesse. Whose heart not patiently bryng this contumelious and vnnaturall dealing, secretlye conspyzed with Heraclius, to betray both his Father and his Brother Medarces, (whom his father had so vnkindly preferred before him) with al their richesse and princely furniture. And promised further, to discampe and remoue out of all the Romane Provinces such Garrisons as his Father had placed there, conditionallye that hee might enioye the Kingdome of Persia, and a firme peace infringible to be kept betwēne both Empires. In this poynte, Heraclius beyng a Chzistian Prince was no more ashamed to deliuer the Kingdome of Persia to a wicked and rank rebellious person, Traytor to his owne Father, and Brother (being now thzoughlye weakened with the losses of so many vnluckye battailes, and now most certainly in his owne hands, specially the King himselfe trusting to his leggs and fleeing, if he could haue vsed his good fortune & victozy when it was offred vnto him) and to buy a dishonorable cowardly peace, by consenting to such a wicked deede: then y wicked Barbarian & disloyal yonker was, by such vndue & detestable meanes to pul y kingdom frō thē to himselfe. Such desire of principalltie reigned in y one, & so great loue of slouthful idleness in the other.

Cosdroes therfoze and Medarles with their wiues being apprehended and brought backe from whence they were fledde, were cast into prisson, and within a while after, by the commandement of Syrochis, both put to death. In whom appeared a cruell example of Fortunes variable- nesse. A goodly president and warning for Princes, to marke and consider vpon, in nominating their Successours, that they at no hand reiectinge the stout and valyaunt, elect and chouse tender weaklynges and effiminate Merycokes. For nothing so soone moueth a noble and firc heart to furious impacience and indignation, as (beyng stout and couragious) to be reiected and not accompted of, among his owne friends. All things in Persia by means of this League appeased and set in order, and Syria and Ierusalem with the other Prouinces restozed to the Ro- mane Empire, Mahomet accompanied with a pompous traine, met with Heraclius in his returne whom warde from these warres, and of hym desired some Countrey for hym, and his Souldiers to inhabite in, which sute and request at the Emperours hands he obtayned. Not long after, it happened that when the Souldiours were payde their wages, the Arabians repnyed, and founde them- selues agreued, that they were defrauded and cut shor- te of their due stipende and ordinarie allowance. Whiche comming to the eares of the chiefe Paymaster, he moze rashly and arrogantly, then wisely and consideratly an- swered, that there was skantlie inough to pay the Ro- man and Greeke souldiours, much lesse for such a rascal company of Dogs as they were. Which wordes with- in a while after, were almost the subuersion and ruine of all Chyistendome, insomuch that euen tyll this day they beare a grudge of reuengment for this iniurie in their mindes against vs. Such a heape of mischieues many times doth the ouerthwartinge wilfulnesse of one rashe person breede, speciallie when stout and warlyke fellows thynke

Horrible
and vnnatu-
rable mur-
der.

First cause
of grudge
betweene the
Chyistians
and Saracens

thynk themselves apparantly iniuried. For the Arabi- ans swelling with anger, and incensed with fell disdain- e for this reprochfull and open contumelye, departed into Syria, and ioyned themselves to Machomettes traine and faction. Wherat Mahomet glad to see his power thus in- creased, went the fourth time against Mecca, determi- ning with might and maine to besiege it. The Magi- strats of Mecca perceined well ynough his purpose and what he pretended, wherefoze with greater preparation and stronger power then befoze, y whole body almost of the Citie bent themselves to repulse his inuasion. Be- twene whome there was at the riuer of Bredine a soze and terrible conflict, wherein Mahomet got the victo- ry, and due of the nobyltie and chief Citizens of Mecca (be- side a very great number of the Communalty) three hun- dred persons: in somuch that at this battell the whole no- billytie of Mecca were in maner all slayne. And so Ma- homet like a triumphant Conquerour entred, and tooke possession of the faire Citie of Mecca, fortifying the same with a garrison of his owne appoyntment, & after, depar- tyng with his army thence, he layd sege to Hunaimum, and wanne it, deuindinge the spoyle thereof (which was very great) among his Souldiers. After that, he besieged Tarsus, which Citie after he had all in vaine battred the space of a whole month, he rayled his sege, and retour- ned into the maigne Countrey of Arabia and tooke firste Itraripe otherwise called Ietripe, and after that Medina a Mart towne well peopled with wealthy Iewes. And grauntyng the spoyle thereof to his Souldiours, he ran- scaked and made hauocke of the towne: but as for all the Iewes which partly in y citie and partly in other places of Arabi (because they being skillfull in y diuine law greatly withstood his attempts & proceedings) he hated deadly, & in the ende in .xi. battalles them vtterlye vanquished, and destroyed. Thence retourninge to Itraripe, he appointed

Mahomet
beginneth
to ruffe.

Azeib his Lieutenant of Mecca, who entred into the Citie with a great route of Arabians or Saracens. For Mecca then was and yet is, as well because of an opinion of great ancientie (for it is thought to be builded by Ismael or else by Abraham himselfe) as also for, the bignesse of the Citie and resorte of people most noble and famous. When againe within the same yere, discharging the said Azeib of his office, he appointed Moad the Sonne of Gadel Lieutenant of the same Citie in his rounne: with this commaundement, that after Mahomet his death he should defend and maintayne his lawe, and diligently looke that the same should of the people be reverently obserued, and so in the meane season to minister iudgement and execution of his lawes to the Mecchyans. All things in this sort being set in good frame and order, he removed to Tambicum, and there buylde a Temple, which is to be scene at this day. Whence he sent an armie under the conduct of Zalid and Malid two of his chiefe Captaines agaynst Alozaid the Sonne of Almathaliph, King of Aliendel, whom by force of armes they overcame, and made tributarie. And thus all Arabia being brought in subiection, he commaunded Eubocar with parte of his Hoste to go to Mecca (he himself lying still at Itraripe) and charged him that he should leaue neuer a mothers Sonne a liue in it, nor suffer any forrayner to enter sauing only such as willingly would obey his Lawe and beleene his doctrine. For his meaning and entent was, (as afterwarde he brought it to passe) that Mecca should be the Metropolitane Citie of his religiō and Empire. And thus within a short space, Mecca was replenished wyth none but Mahometanes. And not onely Mecca but all Arabia besides (as they are people by nature lyght of beleefe and newfangled) embraced his pestilent errorrs. And from that tyme, all they whych yelded themselves to that Secte, were called by the name of Saracens, both because that errorr sproung vp
and

and was first begonne by the Saracens, and also for that, Mahomet perswaded them that all the promyses, in the Scriptures promysed to the Seede of Abraham, belonged & appertayned to them. Being puffed vp with arrogance by reason of this good successe in his affayres, he sent Ambassadors to Kings and Princes nere adioyning, aduising them to embrace his Religion, and vnto them addressed his letters, sealed wyth a Signet of Syluer, wherein were engrauen these wordes: Mahomet the messenger of God: namely to the Emperour of Constantinople, to the King of Persia, the King of Egypte and to other Princes. Afterwarde he created foure Tribunes or chiefe Capitaynes in warres commonly called Admyralls, whych had euerie one vnder them many Detachmentes and Centurions: and these foure he woulde commonly vse to call the sharpe Swordes of God, and them he commaunded to goe into the foure partes of the worlde, euerie one by him selfe a seuerall waye, and to kyll all suche as repugned his Lawe. There names were, Ebubezer, Omar, Ozmen and Ali the Sonne of his vnckle Salutelib, vnto whom he also ioynded in mariage Fatema, his daughter in Lawe by his first wife.

Of these foure, Ebubezer, called of some Vbequar and of some other Buback or Eubocar, father in Lawe to Mahomet tooke his voyage to Palestina, and there layde Siege to a certayne towne called Muchea, the Capitayne whereof was one Theodorus Begarius who had the rule of the towne in the behalfe and name of Caesar. Who gathering together his power, tomainly set vpon the Saracens with such valiant courage and force, that many of them being slayne, the residue lyke fall fellows ranne away. At which time, the thirde Ides of March, Mahomet dyed, in the yere of our saluation. 637.
when

When he had reigned tenne yeres, in the house of Aissa his wife, in the Citie Medina, and in the very same bedde wherein he was wont to sleepe and take his rest. His bodie without any princely furniture or ceremonial solemnitie, was shyned and lapped in a white sheete thre tymes double, and so being chested in an yron coffin, was after a homely sort buried: where afterwarde his kinsfolkes and Allyes edified a sumptuous and magnificall Temple of bricke worke, and arched the same wyth a vault so pargetted with Lodesstones (whose nature is to draw yron vnto it) that the yron Coffyn wherein Mahomet his body was inclosed, was drawen by, euen vnto the toppe of the Church and there hangeth. For which cause that place is yet with great deuotion and Pilgrimage worshipped of all the East. They say that while he was banished his Countrey, going once on Pilgrimage into Mauritania Tingitana, he crossed the Seas ouer into Spaine. But when he vnderstode that Bishop Isidore laide waite to haue caught him, he immediatly shifted thence and conueyed himselfe away. Upon his death bed, he appointed Ali his sonne in lawe to bee his Successour and the Caliph (that is to saye the chiefe Prelate) of his Secte and vnto him together with his daughter, he committed the whole charge of his body. But Eubocar his father in law stopped them a tyme, in that matter, alledging that for as much as Mahomet deceased in his house, and by his only meanes had stepped by to such credite, welth, estimation and gouernment, as being bolstered, mainteyned and preferred by his countenance and friendship, none other by good reason was fitter to succede then he that had bene his chiefe supporter. Against whom Ali burst not once open his mouth to reply, because Eubocar himselfe was a man of great power and also his kinsmen Omar and Ozmen toke part with him, whiche were men valiaunt and factious, whose wordes would be heard

and

and whose commaundements befoze his, would be obeyed. Who sozasmuch as by good right they iudged the kingdome to appertayne vnto them, being Coadiutours to Mahomet in the exployte of all his affaires, had leifer haue Eubocar succede, beinge olde & their nere kinsman then Ali being young and in his lusty yeres, who might perchaunce raigne so long, that no hope euer to enioy the kingdome by the order and course of nature shoulde be left to them, and also for that he was nothinge of kin vnto any of them. Wherefoze Eubocar was made high Bishoppe of Mahomet his Sect: who immediatly after his creation, departinge out of his owne Territozies with a great Armye, discomfited the Roman Garrisons, and retourning into Arabie with victoꝛye, dyed, not without some suspition of poyson, when he had reigned not full ye thre yeres, and without any princely funeralles buried nere to Mahomet. After him succeded Homar, who (as we befoze shewed) was his kinsman. He subdued Bosra the chief citie of all Arabie with many mo, and conquered all the country as farre as Gabata. At which successe of the Saracens, the Emperour Heraclius greatly stozming sent his Brother Theodorus with a great army against them. Who encountering in a bloody battell with Homar, was overcome and fled to Emessa. Heraclius hearing tydings of this heauy chaunce, furnished out Baanes with a greater power against them, who incamped himself nere Emessa. Where the Saracens settinge vpon hym with great force and violence, were by hym vanquished, insomuch that they were fayne to trudge into the borders of Damasco, and lodging their campe by the banke side of the riuer Bardanes made such outrageous roades and incursions into the Countrey adioynnyng, that no man was hable to repress their furie nor withstand their invasion. Wherefoze Heraclius mistrustinge any good successe in the pursute of further warres, and hauninge

ff

great

The first Booke

great diffidence in his owne power, fearynge also his owne lyfe and safetie if he should any longer stay within that Province and Countrey (for hee was at that tyme in Hierusalem, out of which, since the League and composition made with Persia hee had not departed) tooke awaye with hym all the precious Shyres and sumptuous Ornamentes of the Temple of Hierusalem, least the barbarous Enemies should despoyle them, and retourned agayne to Constantinople.

The next yere, the Saracenes layde siege to the Citie Damasco, wherewith Baanes (who defended the Citie with the sayd Emperours Garrisons) being greatly moved, desired Theodorus Sacellarius (Lieutenaunt for the Emperours Maestie in Assyria) to come to ayde and assist hym. Which hee making hast to doe, was by the way surprized by the Saracenes and discomfited.

The Souldiers vnder Baanes, not willing to serue vnder a Capitayne of small credit and countenance, but rather desirous to haue a Gouvernour of most high power and auctoritie, saluted hym their Emperour. But they which came with Sacellarius and escaped the handes of the Saracenes in their laste bickeringe, willynge to keep their true allegiaunce to Heraclius, departed thence, and would not in any wyse consent to the depriuation and deposing of their lawfull Prince and Emperour. The number of Baanes his Souldiours was 4000. And Sacellarius had almoste as many.

The Saracenes hauing intelligence of this variance and deuision among the Romane Souldiers, discomfited from the place where they were lodged, and set vpon them. The bickering was soze on both sides for a while, but (the Wind blowyng full in the faces of the Roman Host which in that dnye and sandye Countrey raysed vp the dust) they neither could see their Enemies, nor shantly

fetch

Of the Saracen Historie. 12

fetch their bzeath. Which oportunitie the Saracenes not neglectinge, but takeyng the same to their most advantage and comoditie, put the Emperials to flyght, in which chace, they fleeing through thicke and thinne by dangerous wayes and deepe places did almost all perishe and were drowned in the Riner Ermeta.

Which luckie victorie so puffed vp the haughty mindes of the proude Saracenes that they aduanced theyr Armye agaynst Damasco, and wynnynge that Citie, subdued and brought al Phoenicia vnder their subiection. When they made preparation to goe into Egipte, whiche hearynge the Romanes, who were Lordes and possessours of that Province, appoynted Cyrus Bysshoppe of Alexandria to be Chieuetayne: who sending a solemne Ambassade to the Saracenes for peace, obtained it vpon condition that he should pay vnto them yeerely a Tribute of .200000. Crownes. And so for the space of thre yeres they were quiet and receiued no kind of molestation at their handes.

But the Emperour Heraclius vnderstandyng this geare and thinkyng this composition greatly sounded to his dishonour, sent for Cyrus home agayne to Constantinople, and in his steede made Emanuel an Armenian, ruler ouer EGYPT, who flatlye and playnelye denyed the payment of anye money, befoze by Cyrus promysed to the Saracenes.

Wherefoze in great displeasure they inuaded Egipte with a buyge power, and Emanuel with a small compaignie for his sauetie wente to Alexandria. But Heraclius to late now, and to hys cosse beyng taught, that promise and faith oughte to be kepte and perfourmed euen to the Enemies, when hee well sawe that hee had not strength ynough, to match in battayle against such mighty foes, sent Cyrus agayne to the

ff ij

Saracenes,

Damasco
wonne by
Saracenes

common supplications should bee made during the whole moneth of September, and after the same ended, the whole volume of Mahomet hys lawe shoulde be openly redde to the people.

He was tall of stature, broune coloured, balde headed, thinne bearded and the same somewhat enclining to whitenes, and was buried nere to Mahomet. But befoze he dyed, feeling himselfe so soze wounded that he despaired of recouerie, he appoynted for his Successour Ozmen: who also had been a great furtherer and fauourer to Mahomet in all matters, and had twyse bene his Sonne in Lawe. For he maryed his two daughters, which both decessed wythout chyldzen, in the life time of Mahomet, which dignitie he chiefly attained throughe giftes and bzyberie. For receyuing at the handes of Homars Treasurer all hys money and goodes, hee frankly distributed bothe it and all that hee himselfe had leste vnto him by his Parentes among his Shoulours.

Ozmen therefore beeyng inuested the thyrde Bishop after Mahomet, sente the nexte yere following a hurge armye vnder the conducte of Hucba into Affrica, agaynst the Lorde Gregorie, chiefe and supzeme gouernour of all that Prouince. He beeyng overcome in battayle, and Carthage also subuerted, he bryted all that Prouince to hys other Saracenicall Dominions. But fearyng to bee surprized and taken nappynge wyth some sodayne Alarum out of Europa, if they shoulde lye long in Carthage, they dislodged thence and remoued to Tunice, a Citie standing within the Baye of Golet, and there rousting themselues for a season, greatly enlarged the same.

But afterwarde receyuing a commaundement from Ozmen that they shoulde not dwell in any Port towne or other places vppon the Sea Coast, (because he had taken suche agrement and order wyth the Emperour, they

they departed five and thirtie myles from the Sea and aboute a hundreth from Tunice where they buyloed themselues a Citie called Cairoan.

After this, in the thirde yere of thys mans raygne, Muauias (who as was shewed befoze was Lieutenant of Egypte) wyth a Flaue of a thousande and seauen hundreth (or as some saye) wyth seauen hundreth Shippes onely, arryued in Cypres, and takynge by force the noble Citie Constantia, spoyled the whole Islande. But beeyng certefyed that Carcozir one of the Emperour Constans hys Capitaynes, was commynge agaynst hym with a greate flete, for feare of further harme, he departed thence and planted hys Siege befoze another Citie in the same Islande named Aradum, where he nothyng preuayled. Seeynge therefore hys purpose to quayle, hee broughe backe hys Hoaste to Winter in Damasco.

In the meane whyle Ozmen caused the odde papers and Schedyles of Mahomet (befoze by Homars procurement collected together) to bee brougt into a better order and to bee deuided into Chapters, makynge of them a Booke whiche is called the Alcorane, wherin all the opinions and Institutions of Mahomettes Sect are contained and at large specified.

The nexte Spring after, Muauias with a greater Flaue then befoze, arryued in Cypres, and assaulted the Citie of Aradum, which at length after many battyes he wanne: and permitting the Inhabitates to go whither they woulde wythout hurte or bodely harme, he rased the Citie to the grounde and layde all the Islande waste and left it dispeopled. At the same tyme also, another army of Saracens vnder the conducte of Busurre, inuaded Isauria and spoyled the whole Countrey wyth fyre and swoorde, and retourned home from thence with five thousand Prisoners.

After

A valaunt
enterprife.

Plameta-
ble slaugh-
ter.

Of our en-
glish money
that Sum
a mounteth
to. 40000 li.

After these so many ouerthrowes and miserable discom-
fitures receaued, Constance Caesar desired a truce for .ij.
yeeres of Muauias: which beinge not obtayned, while
Muauias prepared a great paye at Tripolis a Citie of
Syria, to inuade the Prouinces and Territozies belong-
ing to the Romane Empire, his purpose by the worthy-
nesse and valaunt demeanure of two Mothers was for
a litle while frustrate. Who breaking open the prisons,
wherein a great number of Christians were, set them al
at libertie: insomuch that they sodenly geuing an onset
on the Saracens, killed a maruelous number of them, and
putting the rest to flight, with victorie ran to their ships,
and takeing so many of them as woulde serue to trans-
port them, they set the reste on fire, and came saue into
Thracia.

But Muauias nothing dismayed with this mischance
and ouerthrow, prepared a greater navy, and furnished
the same with all habilimentes and Munitions ne-
cessarye, with whom he landed at Phoenice a Haven of
Lycia, where Constance with his paye laye: and ge-
uing the charge vpon him, made such a slaughter of the
Romanes, that the Sea was red with the blood of them
that were slayne. Constance disguising himselfe in the
habite and apparrell of a poore man, fled in a small ship
with a fewe others in his company to Constantinople:
Which victorie set Muauias in such a boygh and conceipt,
that he thought nothing inuincible, or able to withstande
hym. Where vpon he tooke Rhodes, and pulled downe
the huge Image of the Sun called Colossus Solis, which
Chares was in making (as Plinie sayth) .xij. yeeres, and
the charges thereof oze to thre hundred Talentes.
The brasle of this Image being bought by a certen Jew
of Emessa, was somuch as nine hundred Camels coulde
carie

The Saracenes caried away thence not onely this Im-
mage

mage which was in height .70. Cubites: but innumera-
ble others. For Plinie writeth that in that Ile there
were beside this Colosse of the Sunne. 73 thousand Sta-
tues or Images, and a hundred lesse Colosses. Hauinge
spoyled Rhodes, they cut their course alonge by the Sea
Agæum, and plagued the Cyclades with lyke calamitie.
At this time also laid Generall of an other army of Sa-
racenes, entred into the borders of Armenia, and wasted
al, farre and nere tyll he came to Mount Caucasus.
And Muauias retourning from Rhodes, furnished a pa-
uy with all thinges necessary to inuade Sicile, which
wasted and ruyinated the Countrey with sword and fire
without mercy, tyll Olimpius the Exarche of Italy (for so
was he that had the gouernance ouer Italy at y time for
the Emperour of Constantinople called) encountringe
with them in a bloudye Conflicte, with much effusion of
Christian blood discomfited and expelled them. In
which battell he so eagefly fought, & was so soze wearied
that he fell sicke and shortly after dyed.

Muauias himselfe leuying an Armye by land, conue-
ted them into Cappadocia to besiege Cæsarea the head
Citie of that Prouince. But before he could atchieue a-
ny notable exploit worthie to be remembred, hearinge
that Ozmen the Caliph was dead, in hope to be his suc-
cessour, retyered with his host back agayne. This Oz-
mene in y twelfth yere of his Pontificall dignytie being
in his owne house beset and besieged with a company of
Saracenes which woulde haue had Ali to be Caliph, slue
hymselfe, because he would not fall into their handes. He
by chaunce lost the King of Mahomet, which all the Ca-
liphes before hym woze: and caused an other to be made
of silver, wherein by his commaundement were ingra-
uen these wordes: O PERTINACES, O POENI-
TENTES. He was white of coulour, graue and curte-
ous of visage, a long Beard and of a meane stature high-
lye

lye and dearely beloued was he of the common people, both before and after he embraced this Secte, and gotte very great wealth by Marchaundize.

Notwithstanding he was alwayes verye lyberall, yea rather magnificent and honourable, and (as we haue shewed) disbursed and gaue byzibes largely to the Souldiours that hee might obtayne the Pontificate. He lyued .lxxxvij. yeeres and was buryed in the night without any Funerall pompe because he due himselfe.

Wherefore after his death there arose great contention amonge the Saracenes, aboute the election of a newe Bysshoppe. Some woulde haue Ali to succede hym, some Muamad sonne to Ozmen, and some Muauias. But Ali raysed warres againste Muamad, and preuayled agaynst hym, so that he was installed and made Bysshoppe by all mens consent: sauyng onely Muauias. Who reposinge greate truste and confidence in the Egyptian and Assyrian Souldiours, (whose prowesse and magnanymy he had sufficientely tryed aforesaid in so many Battayles) made sharpe warres agaynst hym, colourablye pretendinge that hee toke the same in hande onely to reuenge the death of Ozmen.

When both the Armies were come to the River Euphrates, Muauias hauinge more skyll in warlyke pollices, and also hauinge olde beaten Souldiours vnder hym, so fortifyed and entrenched his Campe nere to the River side, and the Citie Babylon, that neyther coulde he be inforced by his aduersarye to fight vnlesse he would hymselfe, and also his Armye shoulde not be destitute of water, (whereof in that Region there is great scarcetye) nor yet be vnprouided of victayles, and moreover needed not to feare anye Alarmes behynde at their backes. Whereas in the meane whyle Ali

his Armye, was extremely pinched for lacke of water. And so for the space of eleuen Monthes keeping his Souldiours within the Trenches of his Campe, he werped his Enemye and lyngered the tyme onely now and then with Skirmishes, till at length by the intercession of certayne Priestes and others skilfull in the Lawe of Mahomet, order was taken betwene them, that the whole cause shoulde be decided by the iudgement and awarde of two olde men.

On Ali his side was chosen Alascates, and for Muauias parte Alascius. These two comminge to a Towne called Algendel, to sit vpon this waightie matter of both their tytles, the one thought it necessarye that Ali shoulde be disgraced and deposed from his pontificall dignitie, and the other stiffe helde opinion that he was a man moste worthy for the office. Thus pleading to and froe, neyther absolutely determininge nor fully concludinge any attonement, Ali and Muauias returned agayne either of them to his owne Campe. And neuer ceased with often Skirmishing to molest and kill one another, spoyleinge and wastenge one anothers Countries till at length Ali in a certayne Temple nere Cufa a Citie of Arabic was by the insidious driftes and Ambushes of Muauias slayne, and in the same buried, for which cause the place at this daye is called Massadale which is as much to saye, as the house of Ali. In his Kinge be had this inscription: Corde sincero Deum Dominum veneror. Hee was shorthe and lowe of stature, his Beard was thicke and longe, his Armes and Legges full of haire, and in his goynge neuer lyfted vp his Eyes.

After Ali was dead, the Citizens of Cufa and Aracha created Alhacem (his eldest Sonne by his wife Fatema, the Daughter of Mahomet) Bysshoppe: a man in all poyntes of bodelye feacture and comelye shape,

shape, resembling his Graundfather Mahomet. He with an armie, marched against Muauias, but when both the Hostes were ordered in battaile araiie readie to geue the onset, and the bowward of the one standing full against the fronte of the other, whether it were because he feared the doubtfull hazard of battaile or else (as some do write) that he was overcome with the goodnes and integrite of nature, but willing that so great effusion of blood and destruction of men shoulde be made for his sake, he voluntarily went and submitted himselfe to Muauias, acknowledging him to be his Superiour. Weyng thus reconciled one to the other, they went both together to Cusa, and there finding great store of money and treasure, they departed thence to Ierib, where Muauias with his owne handes crowned Alhacem with the royall Diademe and called him King, because he well knew that he shoulde not live long. For within sixe monethes after his Coronation he dyed being poisoned by the same Muauias. His Poesse engrauen in his Signet was: Solus Deus potens est. Thus Muauias hauing now dispatched and ridde out of the way all his aduersaries, reigned alone. Hauing thus set his affaires in order, he invaded the frontiers of the Romane Empire. But Constantius sending vnto him for peace, had the same graunted, conditionally that Constantius shoulde pay vnto him euerie day ten poundes of gold, and a Slaue with a Horse. At this time Damascus was the chiefe Seate and Metropolitane Citie of the Saraceni-call Emprye. But in this their so great successe and felicitie, there arose dissensions among themselves for they religion, by reason of the varietie and repugnance of Mahomettes scrowles and Schedules. The Persians, being (as we haue shewed) now made Saracens, helde opinions muche differing from them that folowed Homars Alcorane in Syria. Wherefore Muauias with his power sending him into Persia, suppressed that Sect and established

Peace dear
ly bought.

his owne faction, which boze al the swaie in Syria, and appointed an order, that the Souldiours of his Secte shoulde haue allowance of two hundred pence by the day, whereas the Persians had but only thirtie. When invading Cilicia, he spoiled all the Countrey with sword and fire.

And when he was retourned to Damascus, Sapor King of all suche places in Persia as yet acknowledged the Romane Empire, now traiterously reuolting from the Emperour, sent vnto Muauias, one Sergius master of the horsemen, with request, that he woulde ayde him to the Emprye of Constantinople. Who being nowe come to Muauias his presence and shewing the effect of his Commission for which he was sent, beholde, there came also an Ambassadour from the Emperour to Muauias, whose name was Andrew, promising vnto him in Cæsars behalfe large and ample rewarde, so that he woulde not aide nor further the proceedings of Sapor. Muauias hearing both their errandes and their offers, answered: that for as much as he accompted both of them for no better then his enemies, he woulde ayde and take part with him that woulde geue most. And so Sergius geuing more then Andrew woulde, Muauias entered into a league with him. Andrew taking hys leaue, in hys way homeward intercepted Sergius as he was retorning into Persia and hanged him on a gibet: hoping and persuading himselfe, that now the partie to whom the promise was made being ridde out of the way, Muauias with a safe conscience (retaining & keeping still the rewarde alreadie to him giuen) might and woulde dodge & finde euasions with Sapor if he was discharged of his promise. But there was more constancie & faithfulness in the barbarous Infidel, then the Greekes wit could conceiue or foresee. For Muauias, meaning to keepe touch and promise inuolably, sent a bande of Arabians to ayde hym vnder the conduct of Fadala, who being kyled by a fall from his horse, he appointed

C. iii.

Lustre at
lowce, on-
ly to allure
men to his
Sect.
Ambitious
Traitor.

He hath
most money
shall haue
most friends
type.

in

in his steede his Sonne Iazid Capitaine for that expedition: by which power and armie, Chalcedonia was miserably afflicted and Armaria a Citie of Phrygia taken: and leauynge in it a garrison of foure thousand Saracens (because Winter approached) they returned with their Hoste into Syria.

In this meane season the Emperour although Winter were now at hand and all places covered with snow sent Andrew with a small crew of Souldiours to expulse the garrisons of the Saracens and to recouer Armaria. The Greeques therfore suddenly scaled the walles and brake into the Citie without any resistance, and to reuenge their many overthrowes and discomfitures before time receyued slew all the Saracens within, who suspecting no such thing, kepte within their houses, covering ouer the fire in that extreme colde weather. After this victorie gotten by the Imperiales, Constantius beeyng now come into Italie out of Grecia, took his progresse straight towarde Rome, where he taking a diligent view of all thinges, fell to the spoyle, and caried away wth him all such auncient monumentes and workes as were of Marble or brasse, and generally whatsoeuer myght delight and content the eye, and lading his Shippes therewith, sent it firste vnto Naples and from thence to the Citie Syracuse in Sicilie. So that he tooke awaye from the Citie more ornaments in seuen dayes space, then so many barbarous Nations had done in CCliij. yeres before, for there were so many since the first inclination of the Romane Emperre. During his abode there, leauynge his life effeminately & libidinously and looking to receiue the tribute and tribute that he had with much rigour and crueltie exacted and assessed the Cities and Islandes of Italie to pay in so much that many were spoiled not only of their goods but also of their wiues and children, he was by his owne people slaine and murdered. After who succeeded

Rome spoiled.

Emperour murdered.

succeeded in the Emperre his Sonne Constantine, whom the Saracens perceiuing to be a Coward and vnwarlike person, priuily made preparation for a nauie to invade Thracia and Greece, if any tumult or seditious bypote should fortune to kindle in Constantinople. But because all thinges were there quiet, they sailed into Sicilie, wherein the late spoyles of Rome and of all Italy were laid and hoarded up: and with sodaine force took the citie Syracuse which was not defended nor kept with any garrison. And when they could not rouse there in safetie by reason of the neerenes of Italie, they shipped all the ornaments and treasure that was in Syracuse, and with incredible riches returned into Egypt. Albeit there be some which write that Constantine hearing of the deathe and murder of his father Constantius, sailed into Sicilie and caried the Spoiles from thence with him to Constantinople.

After this, an other populous armie of Saracens entering into Affrica, had such successe that they destroyed and wasted all the Countrey neere the Sea coastes (for a great part of the maine land and middle soyle was already in their subiection) and caried away wth them into slauey and thraldome. 800000. Prisoners. And on another side Muauias furnished out a huge Host vnder the conduct of Muamades and Caisses, which subdued Lydia and Cilicia two other of the Romane Provinces. And within a while after, to thintent he might conquere & subjugate Constantinople, he sent another armie after the other, wherof Saxus was General, which being iorned to y other, marched both directly toward y citie Constantinople & girded it about with a terrible siege. And for there more strength, he appointed a nauie to help the, which stopped all the passages and places from the West point to the East of Hebdomum to Cyglobium. Withal this force they oftentimes gaue terrible assaults to the citie, but their attempts were all in vaine. This siege lasted from y month of Aprill till September.

Constantinople besieged seuen yeeres.

The first Booke

state left, which then vexed Crete, vnder the guydaunce and conduct of Fadall and Cadall. Though these good fortunes and prosperous successes, the Maiestie of the Roman Empire seemed eithers to flourish, and somewhat to reuiue and recouer his pristinate glozy. But Muauias hauinge thus concluded a peace and league, which to the Christians was most pernicious (because the Saracens beinge nowe weake and without force mighte haue bene vtterly oppressed and easly vanquished if Caesar had not moze delighted in present Idlenesse and quiet rest then studying for the long tranquillitie of his Common wealth, which by no meanes is made moze longer of continuance and safer with barbarous nations then by perfect victozy) tourned his power & made his quarell against the Mardaites, and dispossessing them from their high describing places in y^e Mountaines which befoze they enjoyed, he studied and bent his mind to appease certayne controuersies and Sectes newly sprung vp about his religion. Wherefoze he called a generall Counsell or Synode of his sect, vnto whom by publique proclamation he commaunded all the learned men of his Empire, and such as had any wryting or Schedule either of Mahomet or of any his predecessours, Bishoppes befoze hym, to come and bring the same wrytinges with them. This Tartarical Synode was holden and celebrated at Damasco, where (when as nothyng coulde be determyned by reason of the contrarietie of repugnaunt sentences) hee commaunded sixe of the wisest in y^e company by the common consent of them al to be picked out, & so there were chosen Mulcine, Boari, Buor, Anoeci, Atermind & David. These six beinge shut vp together into one house, wth all such wrytinges as were thither brought, hee gaue straight charge that they should lay their heades together & out of these wrytinges gather into one volume such actes & sayings of Mahomet as shuld seme to haue any likelihod of truth. And whē they had

Of the Saracen Historie. 20

had made sixe volumes, y^e residue of the wrytinges he caused to be thzowne into a riuer, which were so many that 200. Camels were laden with the cariage of them away. When he apointed by a law a greuous paine & punishment to as many as in thought, wozd or dede beleued otherwise then in those sixe Alcoranes was prescribed. Of the which six volumes, after ward proceeded and spronge by foure Sectes of Saracens: which are called Melicians; Asafians, Alambelians & Buanifians. The Aphrycans were Melicians: the Arabians and Damascenes; Asafians: the Armenians and Persians, Alambelians: the Alexandrians & Assyrians were Buanifians. In Cayre the greatest Citie of Egypt, all these Sectes (no man agayn saying) are vsed and embraced. When Muauias had finished & taken this order in his matters at Damasco which was y^e head seat of his Empire, he died and was there buried. He was the first of the Saracen Capitaines y^e with Ozmen (during Homars raigne) entred into the Roman prouinces wth an host, and was the first y^e enlarged & amplified the limites of the Saracenicall Empire as far as Egypt and Aphrica westward, into Mesopotamia Eastward, and into Asia northward, and was the first y^e constituted a certain seate royall at Damasco: which citie for the fertilltie of the soyle and pleasantnes of the ayze far excelleth any other. He vsed firste of his race, to haue Slaues and Eunuches after a princely state & guise to stand bare headed befoze hym: for he was a man altogether martial and warlike, and in the atchiuing of his deuises prudent and wise. His coulour was white, his face pleasaunt and graue, his eyes of diuers coulours, his stature meane, his Bearde alwayes blacke, for euer as it beganne to waxe graye, hee dyed it and conserued it in his former state. He lyued lxxviij. yeares, and raigned twenty and foure. His Signet which he caried about with hym, had in it this Verse engrauen: O Deus ignosce mihi.

By whome Alcoran was clouted together.

Of learning he was altogether ignorant, in so much that he could not write his own name: whereas other wise he had by nature a verie profound witte. Wherefore it is reported that Mahomet on a time, making his prayers at a banquet in presence of many (as his custome was) said these words: O God teach Muauias to write & to number, and defend him from all dangers. By which words, that craftie Pseudoprophete who knewe the nature of Muauias to be fierce and prompt withall, shewed and signified two things. First, that he, if he had the ayde of any learning, might greatly helpe and furder his Secte. For they which can write, can also reade and thereby become wyser. Then because he saw him to be of suche a fierce courage that he was lyke to aduenture and obiect himself to many perilles and hazardes, he desired of God to teach him the Arte of numbring, wherby he might skanne and obserue due times and tempestiuities, and to haue the skil to take the occasions that shoulde be fittest for the employing of his affayres when they fell: and for the same cause he desired of God to protect & deliuer him from all dangers. But he being a man craftie ynough of himselfe and naturally geuen to pollicie needed not these helpes.

After that Muauias was dead, immediatly his sonne Iezid was saluted Bishop and King, who atchieued no notable acte in his time worthy of remembrance. For he was a man altogether giuen to slouth, idlenes and riot, and moreouer was sickly and of a body nothing lustie: so that he put many of the nobilitie of Arabie to death. He loued his owne Sister libidinously, and was greatly delited in learning and Poetrie, and made many verses, a most spightfull contemner of Mahomets Law and euery other Religion. During this mans raigne, Mutar whom he had made President ouer the Province of Persia, perceiuing his diuolishness and desire of ease openly protested himselfe to be a Prophecie, & practised ty-

rannie

rannie therein: and of the line of this Mutar, the Kinges of Persia which at this day are called Sophi, are descended. Iezid his Poetrie was: DEVS EST MEVS DOMINVS. He raigned thre yeres, and dyed at Arrane, being of the age of fortie yeres, when the Citizens of Cufa had called home Hocem the Sonne of Ali, entending to create hym Bishoppe: but Abdalam the Sonne of Iezid in the fieldes of Carball nere Cufa, treacherously lying in waite, slue him, and there was he buried. In remembrance of which thing, there was at his graue and Sepulchre afterwarde builded a Citie called Carbala, called so of the name of the field wherin the fact was done. Hocem lefte twelue Sonnes behind him when he dyed, that is to say, Zeinal Abadine, Zeinal Muamedes, Baguer Muamedes, Giafar Cadeneg, Giafar Musa, Cazine Musa, Hali Mucercatus, Alle, Muamedes Taguin, Muamedes Halinaguin, Alle Haceme Asquerine, Haceme Muamedes Mahadine: which were in diuers places buryed, that is to wit, some nere to their great Graundfathers father Mahomet, some at Bagadat, & some at Herine: but as for Muamedes Mahadine, the Persians do affirme not to be yet dead, & do hold opinion, that he shall come mounted on horsebacke to declare and shewe the law to all Nations, and shall conuert all people, and that all this shall first begin in the citie of Massadale where y body of his graundfather Ali lyeth buried. And therfore they haue alwayes in that citie a horse ready to receiue him, whom, after the ende of their prayers and orisons, they lead with torch light to the Church: and vpon one certaine day which is among them kept most festiual and sollemne they bring this horse to the Temple where Ali is buryed wyth as much pompe as maye bee, beseeching and making petition vnto the same Ali, that he would as speedily as maye bee, send vnto them this his Nephew whom they looke for. Vnto the which feast, there is resort of people from di-

Dotting be-
liefe of Pers-
ians.

v. iij.

uerse

Marocco
builded.

honour together with the opinion that was conceiued of hym and his Sect, so incensed and swelled his ambitious mind, that he first of all others tooke vpon hym the name of a Miralmumine, which worde in the Arabian language signifieth the Prince of all beleuers: which name afterwards our Historiographers depaured & corruptly called Miramuline. He also builded the large and most noble citie of Marocco neere to the fote of Mounte Atlas, and appointed it to be the chiefe Keye and Metropolitane Citie of all his Kingdome: Notwithstandinge many doe affirme that it was built by Iosippus the Sonne of Tescfine, and some say by an other. Against them Abdimelick (partlye for that he sawe him to procure no hurt nor attempt any hinderance to his proceedings) and partlye because he was wapped in heapes of troubles elsewhere and had moe yrons in the fire then he coulde wel temper, attempted nothing. For although he had supplanted Dadack with all his faction and adherentes and with victorie retourned to Damascus, yet could he not long enioy that victorie nor bzoake it quietlye, because there began such a plague and pestilenciall mortaltie that had almost quite destroyed all the Saracenicall Nation.

Beside this plague, the people were greatly pinched with famine in all his Countries. And the Mardaites getting agayne the possession of Mount Libanus, enlarged their limites as farre as Hierusalem: and moreover the principaltie of Persia, vsurped by Mutar, much disquieted his troubled minde. Abdimelick weltringe in the surges of this froward Fortune, and fearing to bee ouerwhelmed with some greater mischaunce, sent a solemne Ambassade to Iustinian then Emperour, being of the age of sixtene yeres, for a confirmation of the peace and League that Muauias strake with Constantine, and farther to request hym that the Mardaites might bee dispossessed and driuen out of Libanus, which thinge if the Empe-

rouer would graunt, he promysed that he would euery day geue vnto the Romanes in the name of a Tribute, ten poundes of Golde, a Slaue and a goodly faire Horse. And moreover in consideration of the confirmation of this peace which he so earnestly desired, (to shend that Caesar might the better expulse and rid the Mardaites which nowe were not aboue .xij. thousand in number out of Libanus) he gaue and graunted vnto him the one halfe of his yereely Tributes of Cyprus, Armenia and Iberia. This peace being confirmed and he deliuered out of the feare of the Mardaites (a fierce and outragious people) he sent Ciasa with a great Armye againste Mutar, who vnder the pretext and colour of Religion practized tyzanny and exort regiment in Persia. Which expedition and voyage had very vnluckie end: for Mutar with an Host marching to meete him, vanquished him and discomfited al his power, whereby he wanne a greater estimation and credite then euer he had befoze.

Abdimelick to th'intent he might from a neerer place surueigh and beholde how matters prospered in Persia, goeth into Mesopotamia: where he was againe w many calamities & aduerse bzunties soze crushed. For y Emperour Iustinian (y Sclauoys partli yelding themselves vnto his mercy and partly tamed by dent of Sword) picking out of the stoutest Gallantes in all that Nation, a cresse of .30000. or there aboute, mustred and tooke vp Souldiours apace for his warres: and so trustinge to their valyaunt seruice, bzake the League lately made: making for the colour of his quarel, y the money payable for his yereely Tribute had not the Roman stamp, but was of a new Arabian coigne. Sending therfore his Lieutenant Leontius w this new leuted army into Asia, subdued and brought vnder his subiection Iberia, Abania, Hircania and Media, which Regions were vnder the Saracenes Emppre.

A

At

At the same time also one Said reised sedition and rebelled against Abdimelick: against whom Abdimelick speedyng hymselfe with an Army, so dismayd and terrified hym, that he fel downe on his Marybones and craued for geuenesse. Whom Abdimelick with dissimuling countenance pardoned and seemed to forgeue: but with in a while after he commaunded hym priuely to be slain. At this same time also there arose an other tyzantie among the Saracenes, named Abdala Zubir, who sent his Brother Musub into Persia against Mutar: and of hym Mutar was both vanquished and slayne: albeit he enioyed not the fruite of his victoꝝ long. For Abdimelick withall his power goynge againste hym, ouercame and discomfited hym and all his Host: and from thence holding on his way into Persia, brought all that Province vnder his subiection. Abdalas Zubir discouraged with the good successe of his aduersarie, fled vnto Mecca, after whome, Abdimelick sent Cagian with a great Armye to pursue and take hym, who by force winning the Citie Mecca, slew Zubir, and set the auntientest Idole of that citie with the Temple also on fire.

And thus, Abdimelick hauinge recovered Persia, and dispatched out of the way his aduersaries, and being alone in possession of the Saracenicall Soueraigntie, (after hee had oftentimes in vaine, besought the Romane Emperoz that he would not infringe the League betwene them concluded,) at length bent all his power againste the Greeques which inferred warre vpon hym againste the Lawes both of God and man, and ouer his army he appointed for Generall one Muamates. Who findinge the Greeques at Sebastonople, hanged the Tables of the League vpon a Speare poynt, and caused the same to bee boꝝne befoze him like an Ensigne. And calling vpon God to reuenge the breaking and violatiõ therof (which were so solēnelie made and confirmed by taking his holy name to

to witnesse) he in good order of battell gaue the charge vpon them. Albeit first he had corrupted the Sclauoys with money. Of whom as soone as the battell was once begun neerehand xx. M. revolted from the Emperour: & went to the Saracenes: which thinge so appauled the Greeques, that they were easely ouercome and put to flight, and in the chase were kyled almost euery mothers soune. The Emperour Iustinian (for he was present himselfe at this conflict) dishonozably and shamfully by flight sauing himselfe wth a few others in his company, as soone as he came to Leucas, caused all the remnaunt of y^e new band of sclauios to be put to death and their dead carresses to bee cast into the Sea. Wherevpon, the saracenes after ward, without any damage not only recovered their owne Territories befoze lost, but also inuaded the residue of the Roman Provinces. Sabatius also a noble Senator, and a brother of Armenia, vnderstanding of the wrecks and overthrowes of the Romans, revolted to the Saracenes and betrayed into their hands the whole countie of Armenia, so that they yet cease to ouerrun the whole East, and to lead away the christians into seruitude: for y^e part also of Persia, which yet acknowledged the Roman Empire was subdued by Cagian, and Muamates, wth helpe of those Sclauoys turning to his side, and entring into the Province of Thracia, spoyled it wth sword and fire pitifully: the Roman Empire being in the meane season wth ciuile discords and intestine hatred so disseuered and toꝝne asunder, that no man durst set in foote to withstande this outrage.

The Lord Leoutius hauing exiled Iustinian into y^e Ile Cherson, vsurped y^e empire: and straitwaies sent a Lord of his countie named Iohn, with a nauie to inhibite and stop the violent irruption of the Aphricane Saracenes, which not content with the midle lande y^e was graunted vnto them by league for their habitation, inuaded a fresh the Countie neere about the Sea Coastes.

This man vanquishing the Saracenes in battaile, drove them out of the Romane Territories. But soz as much as their power and wealth was dreadfull and terrible in Syria and all the East, and newes brought by sundry rumours that there was moze ayde coming from Abdimelik, to the ayde of these Saracens in Affrica, Iohn thinking his power unable to defend and keepe the possession of y^e prouince, went to Constantinople to fetch moze ayde from Leontius, leauing his host behind him in Affrica. But while these things were to slowly purueighed and prepared by Leontius, Abdimelik vnderstanding y^e state of his subiectes in Affrica, and soze mowed wth the late losse by them there sustained, furnished out a great shauie to recouer the prouince againe. With wh^o the Romane fleet (thinking themselues not hable to make their part good) departed thence, into Crete. Where y^e Chieftaines and Princes consulting together, thought it much soured to their shame & dishonour to returne home, hauing thus lost Affrica and left the same open to their enemies: and partly moued with displeasure towarde the Emperour which did so dreammingly prouide soz the furniture & supply of warlike affaires, egged the Mariners to reuolte, and to salute Abdimar Emperour, whom they also called Tybarius. He in all hast speeding himself toward Constantinople with an armie, and finding Leontius vnpsondered, without any stop wanne the Citie, and taking Leontius, cut of his nose and cast him into prison. The Saracens soz cibile enioyed all Affrica, and drave but all the Romane garrisons. The most part of them that then inhabited the places of Affrica neere the Sea, were of the Gothes lyne.

The Emperoure shamefully abused by his owne subiectes.

This Tyberius immediately after he was enthroned and made Emperour, sent his brother Heraclius with a huge armie into Asia against the Saracenes. Who inuading Syria pearced into the countrey as farre as Santo-

lata

lata and wasting al the places neere therabout, slue neere hand of them two hundred thousande, and taking there many prisoners and great booties, brought all the Countrey in great feare of him. And at the same time the Princes of Armenia, in a sedition killed all the Saracenes, which were in Armenia: and sending Ambassadors to Abdimar, receiued the Romanes againe into their prouince. Muamates netteled with these dealinges, with a great power set vpon them, brought them againe vnder the Saracenicall obeysaunce, and burned the chiefe Princes and leaders of the people alyue. When he also inuaded Cilicia, spoyling and ruyning it euerie where piteously but he escaped not himselfe scotfree. For Heraclius encountering with him, discomfited a great part of his host and toke the rest prisoners, whom he sent bound to Constantinople to the Emperour. At which time Abdimelik dyed, in the .xxi. yere of his raigne. The shew before, that one Abedramon (descended of the Mauronion stock) conueyed himselfe into Mauritania in the beginning of Abdimelik his Pontificate, and was there in suche estimation among his people and Sectaries, that all the Saracens dwelling in that prouince reuerenced him as an other Caliph or rather as one greater then a Caliph, but soz as much as he entemedled not with any bellicall insurrections and also was farre of, Abdimelik did not persecute him so as he did others. But yet notwithstanding his name was great in Arabia. He dying, left a sonne behind him, named Vlce, who succeeded Abdimelik in the Pontificate, & was called the Muralmumine, in the yere after the incarnation of Christ. 708. During whose raigne Armenia was once againe brought vnder the Romane subiectio, and the Saracens there expelled. The Arabians making an irruption into y^e Romane prouinces, toke by force y^e citie Mistra with many Castles & fortified townes and with great booties and prizes returned home. Then

Slaughter of Saracens.

A. iij.

againe

againē vnder the conduct of Abacius they inuaded Galatia and sacked it miserably: and the Emperour Iustinian being againe restored to the Emprye by Trebellius king of Bulgaria, the Saracens taking occasion by reason of these new tumultes & commotions, issued out of Egypt with a greater preparatiō & power thē they did before, and bevelled all Lybia to the Ocean Sea. I call it now Lybia, because I haue already shewed y^e Affrica was before by thē take, which is a part of Lybia: to thende you may vnderstand y^e I do not speake of a part only, which was already conquered, but of y^e whole region. For whereas Lybia or y^e whole countrey of Affrica being almost on euery side compassed about with water like an Island, is on y^e North enuironed with our Sea, on the West and South with the Atlantique Ocean, on y^e East with the East, red & Arabian Sea, and is ioyned to Asia by a little narrow part of dry land lying betwene the vttermoſt end of the Arabia Gulph & our Sea: yet Egypt (which Province extendeth frō the Cataractes and floodgates of the riuer Nilus to the mouth of the same) together with Ethiopia (which lieth aboue it) of many old writers, yea of late Authours also, is not reckened into Affrica. And as y^e riuer Nilus parteth the East part of this halfe Ile, that is to wit, Egypt & Ethiopia, where the large & mightie dominions of Presbyter Iohn lye: so y^e riuer Nigir, springing (as many write) from the same fountain, and hauing (as the other hath his course from the South into the North) so this frō the East into the West, and falling into the Atlantique Ocean, parteth and separateth the most wealthie Kingdomes of the Nigrites from it. So that, the Lybia which we here meane, is contained within the boundes of Nilus and Nigir the Atlantique Ocean and our Sea. All which as farre as it stretcheth from the West into the East, the buyge Mount Athlas cutteth and seuereth a sunder: being at this daye diuided into thre partes, Barbaria, Numidia

and

and Lybia. Lybia which in the Arabian tongue is called Sarra, that is to say Desert, is bound on the South wyth the kingdomes of the Nigrites, on the North with y^e mount Athlas, on the East wth the riuer Nilus & on the west with the Oceā. Numidia called in y^e Arabiā tongue Biledulgerid, (which is to say, a Countrey wherein groweth great store of dates) stretching frō the borders of Egypt to the Oceā, lyeth South frō the mount Athlas. Barbarie from the East to y^e West (contained within y^e same limittes and borders) comprehendeth all y^e which lyeth betwene Athlas and our Sea. And this is also diuided into foure Provinces: Mauritania Tingitana, which containeth the Kingdomes of Marrocco & Feze: Caſariensis, wherein is y^e kingdome of Telenſine: & y^e iii. part both in thold time & now is properly called Affrica, wherein in auncient time y^e Carthaginians flourished, conteining now at this day y^e Citie Affrica, Tunic and Tripolis. After this foloweth Cirenes, which is comprehended in y^e kingdome of Bugia. At the first inuasiō and irruptiō made into this Province during the raigne of Ozmen, y^e Saracens swarming out of Egypt wan Cyrenaica & Affrica. But making peace afterward with y^e Emperour, they were commaunded to depart from all the places nere to the Sea coastes, and so they remoued further into the Confinnes of Numidia and Lybia, and in the raigne of Muauias they againe entring into y^e Territories of y^e Carthaginians, subdued the countrey of Affrica, all about the Sea coastes. And nowe auaucing forward their Standards they inuaded both y^e Mauritaines, & appointed for y^e limites of their Empire the Oceā & the riuer Nigir.ouer which province Vlic the chief Bishop of the Mahumetane sect, made Mucas high depute, & appointed vnto him a strōg power. But yet y^e part of Tingitana that lyeth toward the straites of Marrocke was vnder the rule of Roderike Visigotte king of Spaine. For the Gothes expulling all the Romane garrisons were lordes

of

of the whole countrey of spaine, from 300. yeres almost passed, acknowledging for their King none but this Rodericke: who was not onely King of both the Spaynes, the nêrer and further, but also possessed all that laye toward the Strait Sea in Mauritania Tingintana. The Straites in Affrica, hath thre Promontories, making two Bayes or Elbowes into the landwarde: and in Spaine as many Promontories with so many bowmes or Elbowes of the Sea. The famous and noble Cities by the Sea, in Spayne, were Carteia situate by the Promontorie Calpe, which afterwarde was called Tarifa: in Aphrica, Tingis, of whom Mauritania Tingintana hath his name, standyng by the Promontorie Abyle: and Cepca, called of Ptolomæus, Essilissa.

The Romanes deuided all Spayne into two Prouinces, and sent into them two Proconsulles, or Propretors: whereof the one gouerned the nêrer and the other the furder. But these partes were not allwayes of one greatnesse: for when as they had not yet the whole possession of all Spayne, the hyther Spayne was contayned within the riuer Iberus and the Pyrence Mountaynes: and all beyond Iberus was of the further Spayne, which belonged to the Carthaginians. But after that they had driuen out the Punique Garrysons out of euery quarter of the Countrate, and had got the possession of all Spayne, they called that which on the East and south is enuironed almost landwise wour Sea, on the West with the Atlantique Ocean, on the North with the Sea Cantabricum and the Pyrence Mountaynes (exceptinge Lusitania and Betica) by the name of the nêrer Spayne: and those partes which be deuided by the riuer Anas and compassed about w the Ocean as far as to the Asturians, the called the further Spayne, calling the which marcheth vpon the Straits, Betica, which now contayneth Vandalusia & the Kingdome of Granado, & the which extendeth from the riuer Anas to the
riuer

riuer Duria they called Lusitania and al the hyther part, Tarracoenensis. Which tripartite diuision Geographers in their descriptions haue obserued.ouer these thre Prouinces and also ouer the Asturians and Cantabrians which be on this side the Pyrencees, by the North ocean, and also ouer the Prouince called Narbonensis so farre as the Riuer of Rhone, which was then called Gallia Gotica, this Rodericke Visigot was (as we haue sayd king & gouernour at that time, when the Saracenes extended the limits of their Dominyon in Aphrica to the ocean, which was in the yere of our Lord. 712.

This Rodericke made Iuliane Carle of Cepta (descended of the bloud of Visigottes, a man of great power and wealth in Spayne and chief ruler ouer a certayne Ilande now called Viridis, lying in the narrow Sea, and many other places aswell in Spayne as in Tingintana) his high Deputie and warden in Betica and all other such places as were vnder his rule in Tingintana. Vnto hym hee committed the whole charge, to defend Spayne on that side from the inuasions of the Saracenes, and to kepe the narrow Seas. This Iulyan had a Daughter named Calba, a beautifull young Ladye, insomuch that for her partsonage she was no lesse pernicious to Spayne, then faire Helena was to the Troyanes. For Rodericke fallynge in loue with her, whether it were by force or by fraud (for it is reported both waies) made a breach into her virginitie. Which vnpryncely trick she (as soone as she conueniently could) vttered and discovered vnto her Father. Who dissimuling as though he had knowne nothyng of this iniurie done to him in his Daughter, and keepyng to hymselfe the desire of iust reuenge till a tyme for his purpose conuenient, desired leaue of the Kinge to departe the Court and to go to Cepta, because being there (as he said) he could much better defeat the Saracens entended enterprises. Which request obtayned, he trusted vp al his fur-

Beaute of
a Woman.
causeth
much mis-
chief.

niture of household & wth his wife went to Cepta. When he was come thither, sayning an excuse & his wife was soze sicke, he desired & king to geue Cabat his daughter leave to come home and see her languishing mother, who was neuer like to see her any moze. For Caba with other Princes and Lordes daughters (as the manner was) at that time waited in the Court. Having by this meanes released home his Daughter, he went to Mucas who was (as before we shewed) the head ruler of all Lybya vnder Vlite, and vnto hym he opened from poynt to poynt the whole cause of his comming away from the Court, and promysing to make hym Lord of all Spayne if he woulde geue the aduenture & take the enterpryse in hand. Mucas shewed the whole matter vnto Vlite, because he durste not deale in such a waightye case, withoute his will and pleasure first knowne. Of whom he receaued this answer, that the matter propounded was of great importauce and difficultie, and that it were not best in such a doubtfull matter to geue rathe credite to a subtyl person, and one altogether estraunged from their Religion. Notwithstandinge, to trye the trust and faithfulness of the Carle, he was resolved, that the matter might be best assayed, by deliuering vnto hym a small crewe of Souldiours at the first: and if he sped well and had good successe at the beginning, after ward moze ayde and greater power might be sent. Mucas although he were thoughtlye perswaded by the Carles talke and motion, that althings would sozt to good effect, yet durst he not passe nor goe beyond the contents of his Commissiō, prescribed by Vlite. Wherefore he delyuered vnto Iulyan, one of his Capitaynes named Tarife Auenzarca with a hundred Horsmen & 400. footmen. Who were all transpoyted in foure Ships, into a litle Ile lyinge in that Elbow of Sea that the Promontorie Calpe maketh, which Ile was afterward of this Capitayne Tarife, called Gelriza Tarif.

Vnto

Vnto this place Iulyan called and by gentle meanes allured all his friendes, and kinsfolkes, recomptinge vnto them from poynt to poynt the commodities and pleasures which by his labour, industrie and perilles the King had receaued, for recompence whereof, he forgot not to tell them the Kings bngzatitude, and the spightfull dishonour done vnto hys house by the rauishing and deflowryng of his Daughter, telling them further, that the King did vniustly vsurp that kingdome, whiche by rightfull succession of inheritaunce belonged to the Sonnes of Viciza. For which causes he desired their helpynge handes in this so good and iust quarell to assiste hym, tellyng them that the next yere he would come with a conuenient army to performe asmuch as he then spake. He so much perswaded them with these and such lyke wordes, that they promysed hym when time shoulde serue their best seruice and furthuraunce: and there vpon returned home every man to his owne house. Iulian because he would make a beginning of his purposed warre, inuaded the Ile Gades lying in the vtter part of the ocean, nere to the narrow sea, whiche Ile was afterwarde named Alzira Dalfrada: which with sword and fire he spoyled, carynge the Inhabitantcs awaye with hym Prisoners, and after that shewed the lyke curtesie to Lusitania and Betica, and being laden with aboundaunce of spoyles and booties returned into Africa.

Mucas seeing this good successe and thinkyng it a beginninge good ynough, delyuered vnto hym twelue thousand Saracenes beside them before, vnder the conducte of the same Tarife. With whome hee arrived at the foote of the Promontorie Calpe, which Mountayne was thereof after ward called Gabel Traife, which is as much to say as the Mount of Traif, and now it is called Gibel, and setting his Souldiours on land, toke by force the citie Carceia, which afterwarde euen till our time was called Tarifa.

¶ ij

The

The rumour of this great comotion being spread through out all Spaine, the kinfolkes of Carle Iulian gathering together all the power that they were able, and feigning that they went to repulse this Saracenicall inuasiō, went straight wayes thither and ioyned themselues with him. And so all their powers being linked in one, they wasted and haried al the coast about the Riuer Betis now named Guadalouir, and commonly called Andalusia of the Vandales, Vandalusia. Roderike in the meane season, with as much speede as he coulde, gathered a very great Armie, and appointing his Cousen Germane Ignicus to be Chleuetaine thereof, sent him against his enemies. Who making many conflicts and skirmishes with them was at length with all his Armie discomfited and overthrowne. The Saracens hauing made great pyllage & desolation in the Countrey, and laden with soylon of many booties, and carying a great multitude of Prisoners with them returned into Affrica. At which time, Vlice beyng in Asia, and making preparation to warre with Constantinople, dyed, after whom Zulciminie the Sonne of Abdimelik was made high Bishop, during whose raigne the Saracens the seconde time besieged Constantinople. For immediatly after his creation, he sent Malsana with an armie by lande, and Aumar with an other by Sea against Constantinople, and he himselfe with a great power folowed after. But this his strong and terrible purpose was for a while defeated by Leo the Prator of Armenia: who they (seeking meanes to entrap and deceiue) were themselues by him entrapped and deceaued: for he stopping the passages & conuenient places through which they must needes goe, hindered their reckening.

Whylest these thinges were in doyng, Mucas coming out of Affrica, to congratulate and doe his duetie to Zulciminie the new Byshop, declareth vnto him the state of their affaires in Spaine: whereupon he being merue-
lous

lous desirous to enlarge the limittes of his Empire, gaue him in commaundement, to send Tarife againe into that Province with a mightier armie then any he had before. Mucas therfore retourning into Affrica, the next yere folowing transfreted with a buige armie into Spayne, keeping with him as a pledge or hostage, Richila Counte of Tingis, and cosen to Iulian, whom he halfe mistrusted. Which armie being once landed on the next coast, Roderike speedely gathered the powers of the Provinces nere about. And so with the ayde of the people of Gottalonia (now called Catalonia and in tholde time Lacetani) the inhabitants of Iberia now called Tarracō or Aragon, the Cantabrians beyng at this day in the Kingdome of Nauarre: and the people of Gallia Gottica, wherein are the Cities Tolosa & Nimes vnto the Ryuer Rhone, he suddenly and vnlooked for, encountred with them at the Ryuer Bedalaces whiche of tholde wyters was called Betis, nere to a towne called Xerez. The Saracenes at that tyme had encamped them selues on that side of the Ryuer where Andalusia standeth: and the King wyth his battaile on the other side, wherein the Kingdome of Castile is. For the Ryuer Betis springing out of mount Ortospeda in the borders of Aragon, and runnyng into the Ocean nexte to the Streights, diuideth Andalusia and the Kingdome of Granado from Castile: and runneth through the myddle of Betica, which is bounded wyth the ryuer Anas, springing oute of the same Mountaine. Lusitanie lying West from Tarracō, by a straight course reacheth from the mouth or entraunce of Anas forth right to the ryuer Duria: and the ryuer Pisuerra seperateth the Castulonians from the Asturians. In this place, the .iiij. of September being Sunday, in the yere after the incarnation. 714. he aduanced his Standerd and comitted his fortune good or bad, to the hazard of battail. The fight was most fierce & deadly for the
passage

passage of the Riuer, whilest the one part woulde needes passe ouer, and the other wold not suffer them. This continued a good while in such equall match, that hard it was to discerne to whether partie the victorie would encline: which was much to be merueilled at, considering how soe Spaine had for two yeres last afoze, bene afflicted with dearth of victualles and the Pestilential plague. Wherby the souldiours had not the strength and courage that they had heseze, and the men, who in a hundzeth & fiftie yeres space had not bene trained vp in any warres, cockered and effeminated with ease, had lost in a manner all warlike discipline and right vse of handling their weapons, & were mozeouer withoute harnysse armour or habilimentes meete for the warres: because Vitiza, Roderike his wyse decessour, a most cruell and bloudie wyzaunt, had caused all weapons to be taken away from the people and to bee broken. This battaile continued not onely that day, but during all the whole weeke till the Sundate folowing, there were dayly sharpe and terrible conflicts. And on the eyght daye which was the xi. of September the two Sonnes of King Vitiza hauing the night before indented and conspired wyth Tarife, (who promysed them their fathers Kingdome,) byen backe and priuely conueighed themselves with their retinue out of the battaile, by meanes whereof Mucas with litle ado brought al his armie ouer the Riuer, and then was the Gothes arraye quickly broken and they themselves vanquished. Roderike the first day of the battaile, obseruing the ancient guise of his countrey, came into the feldes, apparailled in a gowne of beaten Colde, hauing also on his head a Crowne of gold and golden Shoes, and all his other appaile set with rich pearles & pzeious stones, ryding in a horselitter of Auorie drawe by two goodly horses. Which order the Gothes vse alwayes in battailes for this consideration, & the Souldiours well knowing their king could not escape away

A most bloody battaile continuing a whole weeke.

How kings in those daies came into the field, with what apparell, & for what cause.

away by flight from them, shuld be assured that there was none other way, but either to die together in that place or else to winne the victorie. For it had bene a thing most shamefull and reprochfull to forsake their Prince and anoynted Soueraigne. Which custome and maner, many free confederate cities of Italic folowing, trimmed and adorned for the warres, a certaine Chayre of estate, called Carocio) wherein were set the Penons and Ensignes of all the confederates. This Chayze in battaile was drawe by many Oxen, wherby the whole host was giuen to understand, & they could not with any honestie flee, by reason of the slow pace and bridelvinesse of those heauie Beasts. In this sort was king Roderike pompously caried in his horselitter during the battailes foughten in seuen dayes space. But on the eight day, seeing things brought to the last pushe and to stand vpon fire and seuen, of or on, he himselfe with others determined to fight it out valiantly: and therfore mounted vpon an excellent couragious courser, called Orell, and animating his Souldiours with a most vehement and pithe oration boldly gaue the charge vpon his enemies. But when he saw the fronte of his battaile to shrink, he departed aside vnto a little hill hard by and stripped himself out of all his royal Robes: and from thence beholding the mercilesse slaughter of his men on euery side, moued with repentance, because he knew himself to be the cause & occasioner of all this mishap, chaunged himselfe into another weede and fled into a deserte of Lusitanie, where he found a certaine holy man, lying solitarie, with whom he passed the rest of his life.

Nowe whereas it is reported and written that he followed a Starre or a messenger of God which conducted and guided him in his way: it may be so, and the same hath also happened to others. But it may as well also be vnderstood of a certaine secrete Starre mouing and directing his will.

And

And whereas they say he was put by that holy man into a Caeue or hoale and a Serpent with hym that had two heads, which in two dayes space gnawed al the flesh of his body from the bones this beyng simple taken and vnder- staded, hath no likelihood of any truth. For what sanctity, what Religyon, or what pietie, commaundeth to kyll a penitent person, and one that seeketh comfort of his afflicted mynd by amendent of life, with such horrible tormētis and straunge punishment: Wherefore I woulde rather thinke it to be spoken mysticallie, and that the Serpent with two heads signifieth his sinful and gylty conscience, which tormenteth & disquieteth those that haue perpetrated any heynous offence, as though it were the Furies of hell, as the Poetes haue foygned of Orestes and others. Where therfore in that place he died, and certaine yeres after, his Sepulcher or Tombe was founde at Viseo in Portugall with this Epitaph or superscription vpon it.

Here lyes the Corps of Roderick, late King
Of Gothes, accurst and fraught with furie dre:
Whose sensuall raigne brought dule and deadly sting
To Spanish soyle: because of Iulians yre,
Which would not be appeasde till he had wrought
The Toyle of strife, and brought all thinges to nought.
All mad with rage and spightfull rancours moode
By deuilish fate: incensde, Gods heastes despise,
His faith renounced, religion eke withstoode,
A foe to frindes, his Countries wracke deuise:
Vnto his Lorde an arrant traytours Elfe,
A murthrous wight, and cruell toward hymselfe.
Embrued with guylt, for sheadding Christen bloud
Which by his driftes were brought to fatall end.

An

An Homycide, of mangling Butchers broode
Did ruyne to his natie soyle pretend.

His memorie shall dye with men for aye.

His name shall rotte, as doth his Corps in clay.

In this battayle all the men of Armes and Gentlemen of the Gothes were slayne and the whole power of Spayne vtterlie ouertowne. Of the Gothicall Army therē slayne, the number was infinite, but of the Saracenes onely twenty thousande: which happened because the factious rout of Iulian which had al the Armour and defence of the Realme of Spayne toke parte with them. And the multytude of them was very great: but they which fought on the Kinges side were in a manner all vnarmed and naked men. A few escaping by flyght ranne whither fortune lead them and saued themselves. They which were comming out of forreine prouinces to ayde the King, hearyng of this lamentable discomfiture, ioynded sydes with them that were fled to Egicia, and embattayling themselves againste the Saracenes which folloved the chase, and pursued the poore vanquished fiers, set vpon them with a fierce recharge: fighting (lyke eigre Lyons robbed and bereft of their whelps) manfully discomfited the bauntgard of their Enemies Armye. But beyng not hable to sustayne the force of Iulians battayle which were strong men and wel armed, they were faine to retyze into the Citie. Tarife encamping hymselfe there, where now at this daye the Well of Tarif is, and thence geuing assault to the Citie, with litle ado wanne it. Which done, by the counsell of Iulian, he deuidd his host into many bzaunches, assignynge vnto euery parte such Capitaines as he thought fittest: ymagining yea not doubtyng but the Christians before they coulde take any counsell what way were best to follo w or be able to gather anye moze power, might be oppzessed and all at once

once disperced whersoever they could be founde. The Sonnes of Vicia and Byshoppe Opasius were appointed Capitaynes ouer them. One Host addressed themselves toward the conquest of Malacca (now called Malaga) a Port or haven of Betica by the midland sea, which to be speedely taken, was much for their behoofe & advantage. Another marched to sack Corduba, ouer whom was Chieutaine, a certayne chystian hauing a litle before renounced his Chystianitie and Saracenyzed, whose name was Mageitar. And the third was conducted by Tarife himselfe, which took the way to the Citie Mentesia, adioyning to that part of Aquitania, which lyeth hard by the Pyrennees and is called Guienne or Gascoigne. And subuerting that Citie (which chose rather to be utterly ruined than to be come vassall vnder Saracenicall slauey, he discomped to Toledo, wanne it, and after that, Gaudalagiar & Medina Almeide, which Citie was so named of a pretie big Table made all of one greene precious stone like an Emeraulde, found in it. When he took the strong citie of Amaia, wherein was kept al the treasure for the wars.

After this he inuaded the Region called Gottici Campi, took by surrendrie the Cities Asturica & Gigion (wherof Mugnusa a Gothian was Captaine) and subiugated Gatalonia, being ayded by Mugnoces Prince of Cerdania, who also was a Gothian bozne. Wherefore the Saracenes made him Ruler of all the places confininge to Cerdania. Another Army, hauinge wonne Granado, marched to subdue Nurtia and Horiuela, where there was a bloody battaile foughten betwene the Chystians and the Saracenes in the plaine fields which are to this day thereof called sangonarij: in which conflict (the Saracenes gettinge the vpperhand) the citie yielded. After this, the same host remoued to Valentia, and discomfiting the Valentians pssuing out of the towne to fight when they saw the citie strongly fortified & rampiered w walls

and

and ditches they took it by surrendrie, with this condition, that the Chystians should be permitted to haue in it one Temple to inhabit, which was Saint Basil his Colledge, now at this day called Saint Barptolomewes. All the rest they dedicated to that Idolatrous verlet, their Prophet Mahomet, sauing onely that Temple, whiche stode in the Figge market, where holie Vincent was martyred, which was after ward an Hospital of chystians. The citie was pestered & peopled with Mozes, alheit the Iews were suffered to remayne still in it, and a few chystians, which dwelt in S. Basilles colledge. Which inhabitants of Puigum, a towne of Enesa, hearing, wher ther was another colledge of S. Basil, left their homes & fled, burying their great Bell & a certayne Marble Image in the church in hope one day of a returne. Whither the saracenes sent people of their owne to inhabit vnder the conduct of Cebole: wherof the same towne Puigum was afterwarde called Cebole: who also builded an other litle towne of the same name. And thus Valentia, Sogorbes, Tortosa, Lerida, Barcinon & Sarragoza with al Spayne, was brought vnder the power and iurisdiction of the Saracenes. But Tarracon because it long resisted & stoutly stode at defiance w them, they utterly subuerted & rased, which was after ward new builded by Bernhard Metropolitane of Toledo, at the commandement of Urban the second of the name pope of Rome, in the yere 1090. By this meanes, al spaine in the space of xiiij Monthes was subdued: which was a thing easie to be done, considering the people wer cleane without armour, weapon, munition or Capitaine, & Opasius Metropolitane of Syuile euer exhortinge them to yield, promysing vnto them they should quietly enioye their religion & lawes as they had before done, whiche promise was not obserued, nor kept sauing in a few places, as at Valencia, Siuile, and Toledo, in which they left certayne temples for the Chystians to inhabit.

Lij

Wher

All Spayne
conquered
by Saracenes.

Whereupon yet to this daye, in the chiefest Cathedrall Church of the Citie, the Rites and diuine seruice among them celebated, is Mozarabicall, that is to say, mingled with Arabian: which was allowed and confirmed by the Bishops of that time, according to the order and institution of Saint Leandre.

After these victories, the number of the Saracens daily increased in Spaine, in so much that the Spanyardes then chaunged not onely their religion and maners, but corrupted their language, and the names of their Cyties, Townes, Hilles, Ryuers and all other places were likewise altered. Albeit many of them fled into Fraunce, England, Italic and Grecia, to craue ayde of other Christian Princes. Some others planted themselves in that part of the Pyrenees that lyeth out into Asturia and reacheth within the Aquitanicall Ocean. And they whiche remained still with the Saracens, had in euerie place, their Prelates and Pastours, me deuout and holy. But the first recouerie and helpe of Spaine, sprang vp among the Asturians. Which Countrey not only remayned safe and vnderminished of that Barbarous Nation, but also was the first that stopped their lewde inuasions, and there was the auncient and native language of Spayne conserued. Which thing that it maye the better be vnderstode by what meanes it happened, we must briefly describe the whole tracte and situation of the Pyrenees. Wee said before that Spayne was in forme of a Cherronesse or almost as a Islande. enuironed with Sea on enery side, sauing onely in one place. The North parte whereof, ioyneth to Fraunce by a narrowe portion of lande that lyeth betwene two Seas, and the Pyrence Mountaines lying a long from the Sunne rising in Winter, to the setting of the same in Sommer, enuiron it about lyke a wall. The breadth of the Isthmos or narrow trench of land lying betwene the two Seas, being one distant but a litle from the

the other is about CCLxx. Myles. But the Pyrence mountaines stretch in length a great way further. For when they come to the angle and as it were into a Baye of the Cantabrique Ocean, which lyeth on the North syde of Spayne, they stretch out in length a great waye into the Equinoctiall West: and keeping of the Sea Cantabricum from the North part of Spayne, stretcheth even into the plaine Ocean, that hemmeth in all the West parte of Spaine. That part of these Mountaines that lyeth toward Fraunce, is altogether barraine and vnfruitful: but that part which is next Spayne, is full of trees, and well peopled wyth many townes and villages. We will therefore beginne our description of them, at the Ocean, where they ioyne in Spayne to the region called Guipuzque, but in Fraunce they border vpon the confines of the Vasconians. On the side of Spayne there is Stephans vally, aboue the which are Befaca and Guciutha, townes of the Vardulians, consynnyng vpon the region of Nauarre & containeth Cantabria and Asturia: then are there other smaller hilles lying out from the Pyrenees, within which are contained Basse and Squa, which doe make the ballayes Rocida or Ronus: on Fraunce side, nere to the confines of the Vasconians, is Iean Pedeportesburie, a strong & well fortified place. Nere to the valley Rocida, y arme which before wee talked of, is from them let into the Ocean, reaching and extending to the mayne Sea through Gallicia or the Gallecians & the Asturians. But from the valley of Rocida, Eastwarde, they make y valley called Salazar, wherein standeth a towne called Ociogauia: then Ronceuall wherein is Isaua: and the frontiers of the Kingdome of Tarraconensis & Nauarre which was once called Nagiera. Next Fraunce are y townes of Bierne. Now foloweth the hill of Camfrank: wherevnto in Fraunce is nere toying the countrey of Peiraner & Vrdos, in Spain Villa noua, an auncient & noble Citie, Iaca, Saint Christinsburie,

stinesburie, and Iean Pigniasburie: and in the same tract, lower is y^e Mount Aragon. Hosca, and frō them, the Oc-
ceranes and Cæsaraugusta now at this day called Sara-
goza. Out of the Mount that lieth ouer Saint Christines
springeth the Ryuer Aragon: and because out of the mou-
taines of Ronceuall there springeth an other little Ryuer
of the same name, called the lesse Aragon or Subordam,
therefoze thys is called the greater Aragon: and the
whole region lying betwene them, was of them called
Aragonia. Where followeth in the Pyrenes a hill named
Gauas, abutting on Fraunce syde, vppon Larount a coun-
trei of the Bigorians, and on Spaynes syde, on the coun-
trei of Tencia. In which Countrey are the towne Sal-
lent, Saint Helens, and Biesca. Out of the hill Gauas,
springeth a Ryuer named Gallecus, whiche hauing bys
course throughe the balley Tencia, falleth into Iber nere
to the Citie Saragoza. Then is there nexte, the Cragge
of Horca, the steepest and roughest of them all, on which,
on Fraunce syde confyneth the Countrey of Arne, and
on that side towarde Spaine the same balley Tencia, then
the Clyues of Taria, from whom springeth the riuer Ara,
whiche afterwarde runneth into the ryuer Cinca nere to
the towne Iuza, hauing on Spaines side the balleyes of
Brote, and on Fraunce Voteia a balley of Guyenne. In
the balley of Brote are these towne folowing: Torla, Bro-
tum, Oto, Linares, Faulum, Bresse, Sarbise, Aierue, La-
resicalla, Scartinum and Giasa. Then foloweth the crag-
gie mount of Bielsa, from which a part of the Ryuer Cin-
ca springeth, and the balley of Bio: and belowe, in this
same very tract is the region Sobarbria: then in the Py-
renes, the vale Gistau, out of whose Hilles springeth an
other Braunche of the ryuer Cinca, whiche hauing bys
course throughe Sobarbria, is augmented by receauing in-
to it the ryuer Segre nere to a towne called Scarpe, and
then falleth into Iber nere Meschinentz.

The

The chiefest tolnes of same in the balley Gistau are
these: Gistaine, Senias, Serbetum, Iean Carauelsburie,
Plannium, Poma, Gistaina, Cerquetum, Lamian, Ca-
talaigna, Badaine. Then is there mozeouer in the Py-
renes the balley Bonasia, and the longe region of Ri-
bagorge: wherein are Gabaleria, Grausium, Benauarre,
Peral and Paniello. Then are the Hilles of Castrum
Leonis, vnder whome is the balley Aran or Fiscalia,
whiche hath in it these tolnes: Biolla in Fiscalia, Lardies,
Vorastrum, Saint Iustus, Ligarre, Aretiza, Sciabierre,
Saint Olalia, Acortum, Tricase, Abese, Planieil, Saint
Foelix, Sason, Silues, Spierle, Ascase, and beneath it, is
the balley named Solana. Agayne in the Pyrenes,
there folowe Petre Blania, Altalauacca, where there
is a passage throughe, the Hilles of Torre, and of the
Countie Pimorent and Palladium. Under these, is the
balley of Henui, wherein standeth the Citie Valentia,
and Palasia: then the Clyues of Andoria, where there
is a passage oute of Spaine, into Fraunce, wth a bal-
ley of the same name, ouer agaynst which, in Fraunce
is Arachium in Aquitanie. Whitherto the places of
Nauarre.

Then a long Cerdania is the Mount Bellamir, the
balley Bibesia, the Mount Liuia and the pitche of Per-
sa. Then they enter within the Countrey of Rocilion,
ouer agaynst the towne of Puigualled, Caudiese, Aro-
tonie, Galamij Fanum, Perapertuza, Eitor and Leo-
cata, where they p^recinctes & boundes end by the Me-
diterranean Sea. In the end wherof, in Spain there stan-
deth Salses a Castle impregnable, hauing win it a most
plentifull fountaine: where in tymes paste stode the Ci-
tie Gerunda or Girona, & ouer agaynst it, in Fraunce is
Tēplū Veneris now called Cap de Creux. Directly on y^e
other side in Gortalonia, other hilles do aunfweare vnto
it, whiche may be called y^e lesse Pyrenes or Antipyrenes.

These

thyow of Rodericke, and what hast the Saracenes bled in the pursuite of their victorie, toke his Sister with hym and departed to Gigion, supposing y place to be surer for his securitie. But when Mugnuza duke of Gigion, contrary to his hope & expectation had entred into league and was assistant to the Saracenes in their expoytes, Pelagius dissimulynge what he inwardly thought, and for the time bearyng two faces vnder one hood, remayned still with the same Duke, vntill Mugnuza fallynge soze in loue with his sayde Sister, and deuisinge whiche way to frame his plat to enioy his desired lust, sent her Brother Pelagius to Corduba, to consult & entreat about certain affaires with the Saracen Princes. In whose absence, (bearyng her in hand that he would mary her) he had the spoyle of her maydenhead. Whereof Pelagius at his retourne beyng by his Sister certefied, departed thence with her, into the higher Country til a time fitter to bring that to passe which he purposed.

The great
daungers
and aduen-
tures of Pe-
lagius.

Mugnuza greatly moued with his departure, tolde Tarifa that Pelagius intended somewhat against the Pa-
restie of the Saracenicall Empire. Wherefore Tarifa sent one of his Captaines, with a band of Shoulbours (if it were possible) to apprehend Pelagius. And now the Shoulbours were come to Brette, (in which towne Pelagius was then resiaunt) who being priuely aduertised by a Christian, (one that was with them and knew all their counsailes) toke his Horse, and ridinge all vpon the spurre tyll he came to the great riuer Pionia, toke the water and swamme over. Whiche they that pursued hym, not daryng to do so, dzead of drownyng, hee escaped their clutches, and came with heavy cheere into the Vale of Canica. Where by the prouidence of God hee mette with the Magistrates and Pæres of many Cities of Cantabria and Asturia, whiche were goyng to surrender and yelde themselves and their Cities to the Saracenes.

enes. And when hee vnderstode the errand and cause of their iourney, it is reported that he made vnto them an oration in these wordes followyng.

Truely I cannot but greatly bewayle the calamitie of these times: & if it were not vngodly so to do, I would extreemly poure out heapes of accusations against the fates and destinyes, which haue differred my natyuitie tyll these dayes, thus to see such slaughter and lamentable manquellyng of my deare Countrey men and (which is moze) such despight and contempt of God and his deuine Lawes. For of whom Gods honoure and glozy is now adayes moze contempned and deryded, I cannot easelye iudge: whether of yonder barbarous Helboundes the Saracenes, who lyuinge in the foggie mistes of diuinelye darknesse, (caste befoze the eyes of their mindes by that damned soule Mahomet) not knowyng the true God nor the honoure due to his holy name, do prophane the holie Temples. Wherein his praise and sacred worde was wont to be preached, trayning by yonge Babes, and Infantes whome Chziste commaunded to be brought vnto him, with their impious rites and diabolicall relligion: and nourselyng them in the filthye suddes of their detestable traditions: do perforce rauish and lyke deuilles pollute infinite Christian Women and Virgins y acknowledge the true & sincere relligion of the omnipotent God. Oppressing so many as they may once get into their hands with most horrible and vspeakable slaueye, dyspoylyng them not only of their temperal goodes, wyues and Children, but also takyng away from them their faith the rock of their saluation, & finally dimme the glozy of God with a patched doctrine of most Idolatrous blasphemy, bringyng them to euerlastinge perdition both of bodye and soule. And els rather maye I iudge the same of you, who (despaynyng of the goodnesse and myghtye power

his pithy
Oration to
his Coun-
treymen.

prisoner of God, whom you know to haue shedde his most
 precious blood for your redemption, by whom you know
 that eternall saluation is purchased and freely geuen to you
 and though whose bounteous gift you haue so many sure
 helps at your most neede, putting you in an vndoubted
 hope of victorie ouer your blasphemous enemies (yet will
 seeme thus shamefully and dastardly vnasked and of your
 owne accord to put your neckes into the halter, as though
 there were no more hope of helpe and better fortune, as
 though you had no God of whome redresse and ayde in
 aduersitie were to be hoped and craved, or as though you
 had no fortified townes and strong places of defence to re-
 pulse this present hostilitie. As though it were not a great
 deale better (valiantly fighting in Gods quarell vnder
 the banner of Christian faith) to chaunge this shorte and
 transitorie life with an euermore lasting & glorious life, then
 to suffer these things before recited. And now behold, you
 which sometime were able to encounter with the Ro-
 mans being Lords and Conquerours of the whole earth
 you which could not be vanquished and subdued by them
 that were the warlikest and stoutest men in the world
 to whom Germanie, Britayne, Fraunce, Spaine, Grecia,
 yea Italie also the Queene and maiestie of all the world,
 all Europa, all Africa and Asia obeyed: you which in no
 wise could be brought to liue vnder the lawes and iuri-
 sdiction of that very well gouerned Empire: you who a-
 lone remayned vnconquered of the Gothes, the fiercest
 wastors and crushers of the same Empire: you I say (the
 power of all Europa being yet whole, and nothing thereof
 lost but the open places of Spaine onely, which also mys-
 carped partly by treason and partly by the foolish wilful-
 nes of King Roderike, whose sinistre fate brought him to
 a destruction and end agreeable to his vicious life, who not
 tarrying for that ayde which was coming hable to haue
 scourged and discomfited those that were the enemies of
 our

our Countrey vnadvisedly ioynded battaille with his foes,
 and being disloyally circumuented by his own traiterous
 subiectes, receiued the reward and byre due for such rash-
 nes and wickednes, which wilfull dealing of him being
 the head, must needs rebound to the generall harme of al
 the inferiour members of the common wealth) will now
 wilfully enthrall and make your selues bonde slaues to
 beare the intollerable yoke a people of al others most vile,
 most abied, most dastardly and wicked. If God for our
 manifold sinnes and offences were so highly displeased,
 and so much turned away from vs, that he woulde not
 admitte our humble prayers and requestes (which I will
 neuer be perswaded to beleue: for he is wont neuer to for-
 sake such as be vnfeinedly penitent, and tourne vnto hym
 with true contrition of heart and newnesse of life.) Or if
 all the rest of the whole world were obedient to the Sara-
 cens Lawes, and that wee had no sure places or walled
 townes for refuge and succour left to resort vnto: yet
 were it much better valiantly to die vpon them then to
 see and suffer those thinges, which perforce we should suf-
 fer at their handes. Beute Creatures and sauage Beasts,
 if their whelpes be taken from them, most egerly and im-
 potuouly lie in the faces of them that haue taken them:
 whom if they may finde and ouertake, they obiect them
 selues into the extremitie of any perill, contemnyng the
 sharpe edges of naked swordes, yea death it selfe, for the
 rescue of their sely young ones. And you which are men,
 to whom nature hath geuen not onely the procreation of
 children and a care to bring them vp, which she hath geue
 to other Creatures aswell as to you, but also hath entire-
 ly committed to your charge a speciall regard to their edu-
 cation, who ought so to instruct & traine them in the true
 feare & honour of Almighty God, y they may be enfrain-
 ed and made heyres of life euermore lasting in the King-
 dome of heauen, will nowe (alas the while) humble and
 subiect

• subject your selues willingly and wilfully vnto the obey-
 • saunce of them which ere it be long will seduce and vio-
 • lently pull away your Babes and childezen from you and
 • plucke the feare of God cleane out of their hearts. Where
 • is now that auncient faith, godly zeale and deuout religion
 • that was wont to be, when younge childezen not yet pas-
 • sing the age of .xviij. yeeres, and holy Virgins had leifer to
 • suffer all kinde of Martirdome and punishment then to
 • worshipping those false putatiue Goddess, whom (notwith-
 • standing) most stoute and wyse nations worshipped and
 • reuerenced: Where be they, which haue aduentured their
 • liues in so manye mayne battayles for their libertie and
 • freedom: Boat sournelles, glowing Plates, terrible Raci-
 • kings, sharpe Swordes, bloudie Axes, al the sortes of tor-
 • tures & paines that could be deuised, in times passed were
 • not able to terrefie and turne Childezen from the true re-
 • ligion and worshipping of God, to Idoles and other phan-
 • tasticall trumperies of Sathans inuention: and now men
 • of growen and ripe yeeres, men of all others most stoute
 • and valiaunt, yea the chiefe Princes of cities, vpon whom
 • the lyght of the sacred Gospell of Iesus Christ hath shyn-
 • ned and bene opened, tremble and shake for feare of a
 • lousie rable of Saracenes, and are goyng to submit and
 • prostrate themselves before them, without eyther hea-
 • ryng or seying any weapon, or receyuing sommonce of
 • any warre. But peradventure you hope to speede the bet-
 • ter, and that they will shewe moze clemencie to you if
 • you voluntarily yelde your selues, and that all your Reli-
 • gion and Lawes shall remayne safe and in suche force as
 • they did before, and that your Wyues and Childezen shall
 • not be corrupted, harmed nor vncourteously handled.
 • For with suche saye glosing promyses these cutthroates
 • and villanous Traitors to theyr Countrey vse com-
 • monly to deceyue and enueigle the simple people: as
 • though there could be any faith in them which haue be-
 • trayed

trayed their Lordes, their Countrey, their friendes, and
 kinnsfolkes, yea God himselfe their Lord and maker.
 Did not Valentia a most strong, maritimall, and famous
 Citie yelde vnto them vpon this promyse: and yet as
 sone as they were entred and had possession of the same,
 they eyther cast out all the inhabitauntes, or kyled them,
 or else by compulsion enforced them vnto their Secte. Did
 not Toledo the very same, and Siuyle and a greate
 manye of other noble Cities, which being deceiued with
 this hope and bewitched with these flattering charmes,
 yeldeo themselves vnto them: These domesticall exam-
 ples are sufficient to teache you, that it is a great deale
 better, valiauntly to dye together like men, and so
 much the moze, for that as yet thinges are not so farre
 spent but that they maye be recured and holpen. You
 haue bygge Craggie Mountaines for refuge, and in them
 some places inaccessible, you haue some Colonies moste
 strongly fortified, vpon trust wherof many times a smal
 number hath discomfited populous armies. And you are a
 sort of tall men, whom the nature of the heauen and earth
 hath made stoute and valiaunt, acquainted with labours,
 and hitherto inuincible. Also there lyue a great sort be-
 der the Saracenes, whiche (I put you out of all doubt)
 will come from all partes and ioyne them selues to you
 if they once salue you peepe vp and auance your selues
 in this your so iust quarell. Behynde at our backes is
 Fraunce, a Region at this daye most flourishing bothe
 in Chyualrie and skilsfull Capitaynes, from whence (no
 doubt) we shall haue ayde and succour. For the
 Frenche will not any longer suffer this cowardly na-
 tion whiche hath alreadye encroched as farre as the
 Mediterranean Sea beyonde the Pyrenees, so sauncely
 and malapertly to plaie these cruell Pageauntes and fu-
 rious pranks against the borders of their Kingdome, in
 suche sorte as they haue done to others.

And

And God hymselfe (if we w yll tourne vnto hym with a mendment of lyfe) wyllayde and strengthen vs, who being on our side, euerpe one of vs needeth not to feare a hundred thousand of these blasphemous Grynneagods and lewde vyllaynes.

This oration sank so deeply into their braynes that beyng perswaded with the pithy force therof (for Pelagius was vehement and verpe earnest in his matter, and for his wisdom and sanctitie of lyfe highlie esteemed among those people) they returned every man to his home and calling their neighbours together, tolde vnto them the causes of their retourne: to wytte, how that Pelagius (whose vertue and vnspotted lyfe was well knowne vnto them all, because as befoze we haue shewed, he dwelled long among them, myraculoulye deliuered out of the cruell handes of bloudy tyrants) met them as though hee had bene some messenger sent downe from heauen, who shewed vnto them what an heynous offence they shoulde commit, and what a pernicious acte they had purposed to doe. Wherfoze not ceassing as well in open Sermons, as in priuat talke to perswade the people to constancie and godlynesse, he was by common assent of all the people created King of Cantabria and Asturia in the yere after Christ. 717 Which done, they all got them to mour Anseua. When the same of this matter was blasfembroad and knowne throughtoute Spayne, all the Gothes that could any way scape or by any meanes hyft themselves out of the handes of that barbarous nacion, conceyning great hope of lyberty & good luck, toke them to their weapons and ioynd side with hym, and such as coulde not be the same out of hande, with all care and dilligence sought oportunitie and occasion how to flee to hym.

Tarifa sent against hym Abraelm Alcamack w a great Army, and with hym Byshop Opasius Sonne of the king of

of Egica, and Metropolitane of Syuyle, who (as befoze hath bene tolde) adhered to the faction of Iulian and other traitours of their Countrey. Pelagius hearing what great preparatiō was made against him, & seeing himselfe not of equall power to repulse so great a multitude, entred w a few of his companie (but of the valiauntest among his whole bande) into a certain Denne within y Mount Anseua, appointing the rest to defend y narrow passages and streight wayes. Whither whē y Saracens were come, Opasius wēt about w many glosing termes to persuade them that kepte the streides, to yelde them selues vnto the Moores, but when he saw his labour was all in vaine, there beganne a cruell and a bloudie bickering. The Saracenes shotte so many Arrowes and Dartes into the denne, that they seemed to rayne from Heauen as faste as dropes of water in a stormie sholwer, and so light among them as thicke as Hailstones. But God myraculouly making their dartes to rebutte against the same persons that shotte them, there were so many of them either slaine or wounded that they were forced to recule and geue back. When the Christians vndoubtedly knowing y God was with them & fought for the, yeldded most hartie thanks vpo their knees vnto his diuine Maiestie, y it had pleased him, thus to relieue & visit his pooze afflicted people: which done, they boldly issued out, & vtterly repulld all y residue. There were slaine of y Saracens in this cōflict about. xx. M. & of the Christians very few or none at all: for wyters make no mention thereof. Those Saracens which escaped from the battaile, fled into y top of the hill: which by diuine miracle being shaken w a terrible earthquake, and falling downe into the Riuer Iua, running by the fote of the same hill, they were all cast awaye and perished. Opasius and Mugnuza two Archtraitours, as they were fleeing (for they went not by with their seloues vnto the hill) were taken: and

A miracle of God in deliuering y Christians.

Traitours canot yelos per long.

¶

Mugnuza

The first Booke.

Mugnuza in a place called Olaglias was straightwayes by the Asturians put to death, and the Citie Gigion utterly ruynated to the perpetuall ignominie and shamefull reproche of the said Mugnuza Prince therof. What was done with Opasius, Authors make no mention.

When Mucas heard hereof, suspecting that Iulian & others of the same conspiracie, were priuie to the counsells of Pelagius, he straightwayes commaunded Iulian and Sifibertus and Ebasius the sonnes of king Vitiza to be put to death, and thus in the ende they receiued a iust reward of their treason. Which example so terrefied many of Iulians retinue and faction, that they revolted from Mucas and went to the Asturians: and those whiche liued vnder the tyrannie of the Saracens, dayly by stelfh and priuily flying to Pelagius, his power within shorthe space was so encreased, that they which a little before were scantly able to defende their owne, now recouered many of those Regions and Cities which the Saracens before had brought vnder their subiection. For the Citie Legio (at this daye called Leon) was immediatly to them surrendred: so also was Rota, Mansilia, Canicas (commonly called Cangas) Tineum and many other townes of that Countrey.

The



The Second Booke. 40

Containing the declination of the Saracenical Empyre, till the beginning of the Turkes.



The Saracens in the East being in a great pbyrensie that their Siege certayne yeeres passed layd to Constantinople was frustrate, and hearing that (Leo by whose only meanes their attempte was repelled) was now Emperour, leuped a mighty armie againe and deuiding the same into two partes toke in hand the same enterpryse afreshe, purposing then neuer to bying their desires to a finall effect and conclusion. Malsamas the Generall of thone armie, transfretting with his cōpanie into Thracia, spoyled a great part of that Province and geuing a sharpe assault vnto the chiefe citie and Imperiall Seat therof, encamped himself on y^e West side of y^e same Citie nere to y^e walles, where there is an Isthmos or narrow portio of land hauing Sea on either syde, & on that part he laid battrie. Zulciminie the chiefe Bishop, laye before the citie on the Sea with a nauie of thre thousand shayle, as many do affirme. For the citie Constantinople being both very huige and beautifull and aswel by nature as Arte most strong and impregnable, standeth at the mouth of the Thracian Sea Bosphorus, (where Asia and Europa do almost ioyne together, hauing no moze but one small streit Sea to part them) by which it is emptyed & hath issue into y^e Sea Propontis: where there stretcheth out a little Cape or elbow of Sea full of wyndings & turnings in, as though they were Hauens. For which cause the place is called by the name of a Horne, because by reason of the seuen hilles of the Citie hanging out into it, it

Constantinople againe besieged.

P. II.

bath

hath as it were many boughes or bzaiches like y^e boznes of a Hart. Along betwene this Cape and Propontis, there runneth a certaine hill, in forme like a Cherronese or half Ile, beyng on euery side almost enuironed with water, containyng in length from the west into the East aboute thyrty furlonges, howbeit it riseth not greatly in anye height, but the ridges and clyues thereof do runne styll a long Propontis. On the North side, where his forme is lyke a Hozne (which a litle before we termed a Cape or Elbow) it hath seauen Hylles annexed vnto it, of the which foure, do hang out into the Cape, and that which is washed with Bosphorus, is the greatest and maketh the base of a Triangle: for the forme of this Citie and countrey beyng almost a perfect Ile is thre cornerde. This hath two Promontories, one lyeinge towarde Propontis, west of Hebdomum, the other Northward, which defendeth the mouth of the Baye from the iniurie of wyndes, and is called Chrysoceras. From whiche if a streight lyne be drawen to the seauenth and innermost Hill of all (which also defendeth the Bay from the west wynde) you must needs include y^e plaine champaine of Pera (now called Galata) within the compasse of the Arche, made by reason of the continuall ridge and cliffe of the Cherronese. The length of that Cape or Bay is about lx. furlonges in the innermost part whereof, are the mouthes of the Riuer Cydrus and Barbysa: the latitude or bredth thereof is diuers and not in all places alyke: where it is mooste, it passeth not sixe furlonges, and where it is lest, not aboute thre. The streits of it ar very narrow. For on the north part, wherein the towne Pera standeth, there hangeth out a Promontory into the South named Metopicum and Cyclobium: and lykewise an other on Asia side, directlye abutting vpon the middle Streites of the Baye, named Damalicum. This Cherronese on the west side, where

the mayne Land of Thracia lyeth, doth seperate this Elbow or Bay from Propontis with a narrowe porcion of land lying betwene the two Seas.

The bredth of that same Isthmos or narrowe share of Land, where it toucheth the seauenth Hill and inner corner of the Citie, is fifty paces: and further beyonde, it is greater. Thus in this plot of ground beyng a perfect Ile on all sides sauing one, is situate the noble Citie of Constantinople, once called Bizantium, ouer againste whom, on the other shoze side of the Streict, standeth the towne Pera, once called Galata, which also maketh promontories into y^e Hoyned Bay. And in Asia there is directlye ouer against it, the Citie Chalcedon. The entrees of this Crake or Hauen in the narrowest places are enclosed and fast shut vp with a great Cheyne, which reachynge from the Tower Pharea to the Promontorie Chrysoceras is extended and drawn in length ouer to the Metopique Promontorie of Galata, where there is also an other strong fortresse or Blockhouse. The Citie it selfe is fenced and fortifyed with thre strong walles, two verye broad and deepe ditches, and many Towers and Bulwarkes beside. It hath on euery side a playne prospect. The middle part of the Citie ryseth vp a litle in height, by reason of the Hylles whereon it standeth. The whole circuite or compasse of the Citie is about xlii. myles.

Constantinople is in compasse xlii. myles.

This so noble, and flourishing Citie, Constantine in the place where before Byzantium stode (vndoubtedly y^e enough as the sequelle proued) buylded, and translated the Imperiall Seat with all the riche Ornamentes of the Citie of Rome thither. For although the soyle where it standeth seemed to be a place most fit for an Imperiall citie, yet y^e disposition of the ayre and destenie would not suffer this citie to be y^e head seate & kepe of the Romane empire. For as not only euery Country but also euery citie haue their proper fates, manners, fashions and rites: so they

may not safelye be translated or remoued into an other place, no although the verye same persons and Lawes bee translated and remoued thither with them.

For the disposition and temperature of the ayre altereth mens manners, which being altered their destinies and Fortunes are also chaunged. Which to be true, the ende proued apparantlie. For the Empire being translated almost into the borders of Asia, the Emperors themselves and the Romane Legions were afterwarde chosen out of that Province, who being infected with their Greke like lightnesse and ambition, seditiously practized sundry factions amonge themselves, and effeminated with the nyce wantonnesse of Asia, were not of power to repel the incursions of so manye Barbaryans: when as in y^e meane season, Italie and Rome, the Maistresse and Castle of the whole earth, lacking a head and hauyng lost the right vse of warlike discipline was made an open pray for all nations to invade. And thus that Emperour which (lyke a good tree) in his owne soyle bare very good fruite, beyng transplanted into a strange aire and ground, within short time perished and came to ruine.

But to retourne agayne to our purposed narration. Malsamas aduanced his power to besiege by lande, that part which we sayde stode in the Isthmos or streit p^{ar}ce of ground, betwene the Horne and Propontis, whiche could be oppugned none other way but onely by land. He because his purpose was, utterlye to disapoynt the Citizens that no victuall shoulde be conueighed vnto them, and for that his desire was to encroche as nere to the walles as could be, so politiquely lodged his Garrisons & Host on euery side that the fronte of his Armye, was as though it had bene a Hothe next to y^e walles, & thence as the filds farder of from the narrow land, stretch out in breadth & scope, raught out along about the Cape or Bay vnto the mouthes of the riuers which we sayd had their

ysues

ysues & fallynge into the same. For this Host was merueilous populous, and so mydable, and therfore required great ground & elbowe roome. From thence making many roades into the country adioynning, he lamentably distressed the same, and threathning utter subuersion to the Citie laide battreye and siege to it with Dynes, Bastiles and all kinde of Engynes that might any way further his pretence. On thother side, Zulciminie with his Nauye on the Sea enuironed the whole Citie, on that side towarde Propontis and Bosphorus from the narrowe lande to the Promontorye Metopick, insomuche that to them that looked out of the Citie, y^e Seas Propontis and Bosphorus seemed all ouer to be couered with wodde lyke a Forrest. He slept no more in his businesse then Malsamas dyd: but with sea skalyng ladders and such Gunnes as then were in vse, assaulted the citie and most fiercely shoke it.

But the besieged Citizens were so vigilaut and so hardy withal, that all their attemptes and deuoyzes were wholly frustrate. Wherfore seing they could not this way p^{re}uaile, they thought to win their purpose by long siege and tract of time. But Zulciminie in y^e meane season died in his owne Campe, whereby there arose a seditious tumult among the Saracenes for the chosinge of a new byshop, and for that cause the siege was for a time intermitted. At length Aumar the sonne of Abdimazid was created Byshoppe in the dead mans place, in the yere 721. The wynter was then so extreamly colde, that all the riuers were hard frozen ouer with yce. And also they had victuall dayly brought into their Campe out of Egypt, yet because the number of the men and Beastes was exceeding great and the winter extreamly colde, a great sorte of them dyed, some with colde, some for samyne and some of diseases, & a great rablement of them thinking to get some bootie abroad, yssued out of their owne Campes and made incursions into the frontiers of Bulgaria, where they

Burning
Glasses.

they were of the Bulgarians incountred withall, and in manner all slayne, as they were about their pyllage. At which time, there were (as some affirme) of them slaine xxx. thousand. Leo the Emperour also was with them to bzing, by an artificiall deuise of fireworke, wrought by a Glasse, as Archymedes of Syracuse also sometime did. By meanes of which Glasse he set on fire the fleet of the Saracenes and so spoyled them that few of them escaped but burnt and they which escaped were take of the Grekes, by reason that the Captaines of them for feare of the fire, yelded themselves & fledde for succour vnto the Grekes. This fine inuention founde out by a certaine cunning Architect, meruellously appauled their spirites: for y^e be rie Sea about the Shippes seemed to be al on a light fire. Such another kind of burning glasse as this, wee read was at Alexandria in Egypt in the watche Tower named Pharos, wherewith the inhabitantes when they lysted, holding the same ful against the Sunne Beames, set the Shippes of their enemies on fire a great way off.

During this while, Mucas & Tarifa hauing subdued Spaine, began to bee had in suspicion by Aumar. Whereupon they came both together to salute their new Bishop and to cleare themselves from all suspicious crimes that coulde be objected against them. Where Tarifa accused Mucas of extortion and layde to his charge that hee had purloyned the Princes treasure during his regiment in Spaine: of which crime he being attainted and found guilty against the high Bishop, took such inward griefe that he dyed. In whose place, Aumar preferred Gizid to the Lieutenantship of Affrica, and Tarifa he appointed Regent of all Spaine. Wherefore Gizid with a well appointed Flaue of three hundred and sixtie Saile, with the supplie of the other Legions and victuall, made his course directly toward Constantinople: but hearing by the way tidings, how the Constantinopolitans had consumed

sumed the most part of the Saracenes Shippes with fire, he durste not aduenture any further, but stayed vpon the coastes of Bithynia, robbing and makinge spoyle of the Country round about: In which place he had but a colde welcome geuen hym by the Romane Legions beyng there in Garrisons, who setting fiercely vpon hym, kyled many of his people and so skarred y^e residue that they were glad to retire. Yet neuertheles the terrestrial army vnder the conduct of Malsamas, desisted not their Siege before the Citie, and yet they were so sore pinched with famine and hungre, that they were fayne to eate the dead Carion of any maner of Beast: yea they eat dyed ordure and dung, and are reported also, to be so nere dyuen that for very neede they eate their owne fellows fleshe being dead, such an exceeding desire had they to conquere that Imperiall Seate and Citie royall of all the Romane Empire orientall.

Constantinople in the meane season escaped not free, but was plagued with as great mortalitye an other way. For the pestilentiall plague consumed wel nere .CCC. thousand persons. When tydings of these so great and so many ouerthrowes and infortunate calamities was brought to Aumar, he was therewith so dismayd that hee immediatly addressed his letters to Malsamas, with commaundement forthwith vpon the receipt thereof to retourne home with all his Army left alieue. Whereupon Malsamas shipped his Souldiours and departed. But there sodenly arose such a vehement tempest and boisterous wynd, that all their Shippes (sauing onely tenne) perished in the Sea, whereof few were taken by the Romans, the residue returned home to bzinge newes of this their heauy chaunce & mysfortune. But Abdeluzite the Nephieu of Mucas, whome Mucas at his departure out of Spaine appointed his Deputie, marrying y^e Queene Egilona late wife of Rodericke, by her counsell p^{ro}claymed,

Lothsome
famine as
monge Sara-
cenes

Great
plague in
Constanti-
nople.

Shipwreck

med, himselfe king of Syuyle. Whereat the Saracenes greatly fuming & chafing, kyled both him and his wife, and in his roome substituted an other of Mucas his kinsmen named Aiub, tyll such time as their high Bysshoppe should take order for sendinge some other. This Aiub repaired and reedified the Citie Bilbilis (wherein the noble Poet Martiall was long before borne) ruinated and much defaced during those warres, and many other Cities in Spayne: and named it by his owne name Calataiub, which is now called Calataiud. But he could not perfourme his purpose so fullye aboute the rest, because there was diuers in sundrye partes of Spayne, which (vsurping the Kingdome) were obstacles in his waye. For whereas Corduba was the head Citie and Seats royall of all Spayne, and the Captainshippes or gouernance of al the other Cities and Prouinces were distributed and bestowed vpon the noble men of the Countrey, euery one imitating the fact of Abdeluzite, called themselves Kinges of those places where their auctoritie and Iurisdiction laye. Whereby Spayne was deuided into many Kingdomes, as the Kingdome of Syuyle, Granado Giaen, Murtia, Denia, Sciatiua (whiche was once called Setaba) Valentia, Tortosia, Lerida, Fraga, Saragoza and many other les places not of so great fame as these. which Kinges so long as they agreed among themselves, oftentimes afflicted Christendome with great ouerthrowes and oppzessions: but after that they fell at discorde and intestine variaunce among themselves, they gaue occasion to the Christians, to recouer Spayne againe into their owne rightfull possession. Which thing was first attempted (as before we haue shewed) by Pelagius, who vsinge his valiauntnesse, wisedome and myracles to his best commoditie, and happelye takyng occasion by this dissention and discorde of his Enemies amonge themselves,

Iuanus

Iuanne agayne many cities and deliuered sundry townes out of the miserable thraldome of their tyrannie. With hym did Alphonfus the sonne of Peter Duke of Calabria ioyne and take parte, being descended of the ancient line of Richared King of Gothes, vnto whome Pelagius gaue his Daughter Orismunda in marriage: and they two achieved many notable victories ouer the Pyscreaunte Moores.

In the East, after the discease of Aumar the Caliph, Gizide the Sonne of Abdimelik succeeded and was installed in the pontificate in the yere of our Lozde 722. In whose raigne, there stepped vp an other Caliph and Gizid in Persia, whose name was Moalabs. Against whom was sent with a great army Masabnak, who vanquished hym in battayle and subdued all Persia: and thus Gizid the sonne of Abdimelik, was the onely Caliph of all the Saracenes, who raigned thre yeres and then died. After whom, his Sonne Euclide was created Caliph, who entred the Romane Prouinces in Asia and Europa with a huge power: but within a short while, without perpetrating any notable exployte worthy of remembrance, he gaue hymselfe altogether to ydolensse, sloth and voluptuousnesse. Notwithstanding, in the seconde yere of his Empire he sent Malsamas with an host againe into Cappadocia, who toke the Citie Cæsarea and Euclide he sent by an other way into Thracia, who hauing wasted and spoyled it, retourned into Syria.

About this time nere the Sea coastes of the lesse Asia, the earth in the bottom of the sea burned, in such sort, that at the first there appeared nothyng but smoke, but within a while after such incredible stozes of heat burning Pumise stones (as though they had bene litle hilles in the Sea) swam aboue water, that with the same Pumyses, al the shoares of lesse Asia, Lesbos, Abydos and Maccodonia were full, and the Sea it self seemed all covered ouer, & a

certaine Island at that time appeared and was discouered nere the holy Isle. After this, Euclide sent one Muauias and Amer with an Hoste of. 90000. Saracenes to bessege Nicæa a Citie of Bithynia: which being most fiercely and strongly with all arte and pollicie by them assailed, the Christians most valiantly defending, and beating them alwayes back with great slaughter and effusion of bloude, at length they raised their Siege and returned home without any harme doing, sauing y in their retourne they tooke a little Towne called Ateum. Afterward y Prince of Gazaria, sonne to Cagan king of Bulgaria, warred vpon the Saracens in the borders of Armenia: and (Gradack the Prince of Armenia & Media a Saracene bozne, being in battaile vanquished and slaine,) he brought those two Prouinces againe vnder the subiecti-
on of the Romane Empire. And in the yere. 730. Malsamas with a huge power entred into the Streights of Caucasus, and gaue battayle vnto the Turkes (who at those dayes were called the Hunnes Teutazites which is to saie, Gernile) a fierce & terrible people dwelling within those Mountaynes. This bloody battaile continued a whole day, and many slaine on both sides, till night came and brake of their fight, vncertaine as yet to whether side the victorie woulde incline. But Malsamas retired into Armenia, so he had now concluded a peace with y sonne of King Cagan.

During all this while, Pelagius hauing good successe in his Spanishe affaires against the Saracenes, the Tarraconians liuing in the mountaines, by the example of the Asturians created Garcias Scimenecius their King in the denne of Iean Pignia, called Panouio. And within a while after Pelagius when he had reigned. xiiij. yeres dyed, in the yere of our Lord. 732. After whom his sonne Fasila succeeded, who in the secōd yere of his raigne was in a wodde deuoured of wilde Beares, leauing no child behind

behind him. These kings appointed the chiefe Citie of their Kingdome at Legio which is now called Leon, and bare in their Coate Armour, a Lyon purple in a Shielde Argent. Not because of the name of the citie where their Seate royall was, whiche hath his name not of a Lyon but of a Legion of Souldiours whiche Cocceius Nerua placed there: but because they fought so couragiously and eirely for the sauegard and libertie of their countrey, as though they had bene most fierce Lyons. In the raigne of this Fasila, the Saracenes passed into Fraunce by that part of the Pyrenees that was in their possession by the Mediterranean Sea. Fraunce was then possessed of the Frankes a people of Germanie, who about 400. yeres after the incarnation, departing out of their natie Countrey to seeke some other place where to plant theselues, had that part of high Bourgoyne next to Germanie geuen vnto them to inhabite, by Aetius a Romane Senatour who then was Prince of the Prouince of Gaule, because he woulde haue some strong garrison and defence against the Hunnes (who were then issued in great plumes out of their owne Countrey, and vnder the conduct of Attila, spoiled and wasted Europa) if they shoulde fortune to inuade Gaule, which Realme is yet of their name called Fraunce. For the Frankes were the warlikest & stoutest people in all Germanie, inhabiting (as I thinke) that region or portion thereof which is yet called Franconia or Frankland: who afterward by little and little enlarging their ditton, obtained at length the regiment and Empire of all Fraunce, in so much that the name of the Frankes extended very farre. But when the Franke or Frenche Kings addicted themselves to an ydle and voluptuous life and degenerated from the former stoutnes and valiaunce of their Progenitors, not executing the administration of their affaires in their owne proper persons but employed the same by vnderofficers of their Court and Graund

The Armes of the kings dome of Lyon.

How Fraunce was first named.

maisters of their Household, Pipine the first of that name Sonne of Arnolph Duke of Bauaria first attained this honour and dignitie by subduing and getting the vpper hand of y^e Lieutenants and Captaines of the kings p^{ro}uinces, who seeing the king to be a weake and vnwarlike man, tyrannically ruled the Countrey according to their own sensual lustes & for their p^{ri}uate commodities.

Then in the raigne of Theodoricus the second, the excellent dexteritie and worthy vertue of Charles Martellus second Sonne to this Pipine was in that office very conspicuous and renoumed throughtout all the lande of Fraunce, in so much that he was accompted and taken as the p^{ri}nce of all the people. At the same time, was king of Aquitanie (th^e called Gallia Gottica) one Eudo a Gothian bozne, whom king Roderik made ruler of y^e p^{ro}uince, but hearing of y^e discomfiture of y^e king his Liege Lord, he made himselfe king thereof. This Eudo whyle Charles Martellus was busied wth other warres in Germanie, began to surmise certaine quarells, which brake out into open warre with the French Capitaines of the places neere adioyning to the limittes of his Territories, whom (going about to defend their titles & rightes) he afflicted with many ouerthrowes. Wherefore Martellus tooke the matter in hande and warred against him. And at the same time the Saracens passing the Pyrenies, had taken Narbon, and in it shewed all kind of outrageous crueltie, because they woulde by that example make the countrey afraide any moze to withstande th^e. Wherefore Eudo considering with himselfe that he was vnable to warre at one time both with y^e Frankes & the Saracens, and for y^e Mugnoces a man in great fauour and estimation with y^e Saracens was his Sonne in law, he thought it better for him to make a league & amitie with y^e Saracens th^e with y^e Christians. Which after he had by Mugnoces meanes and friendship brought to passe, looking big vpon the

the matter and bearing himselfe stout by reason of the aide and succour, which they sent to him, he inferred much harme to the Franke Nation. But when he perceaued, that the Saracens fortified with their owne garrisons, and kept to their owne vses, al such Cities & towne as they entred into, he bega when it was to late to beset himselfe and wishe that he had neuer attempted any such enterprise. For they kept Nimes, Mountpelier, & Auinion with all the places thereabout in their owne possession. Whereupon Eudo gathering all his power together to p^{ro}fligate and driue them out, gaue vnto them battayle, wherin he was discomfited. Mugnoces by whose meanes and p^{ro}curement the league and amitie was concluded, greatly complayned of the iniurious dealing of Eudo in falsifying his faith & infringing his p^{ro}mise accordingly as he had undertak^e for him. Whereupon Abderama king of Gottalonia marching with an host against him, besieged him in y^e Castle of Cerdania: out wherof, Mugnoces for scarcitie of water escaping, & fleeing into thickets and hillish places, fell into y^e hands of another cōpany of Saracens, who tooke him prisoner & beaustly slew him and sent his head & his wiues (y^e daughter of Eudo) to Abderama: and thus all y^e traitours of their Countrey within shorte space, came to a miserable end and confusion. Then Abderama hauing dispatched and ridde out of y^e way all enemies y^e were to be feared on his back, returned into Fraunce, passed the riuer of Rhone, and destroyed many places y^e belonged to the Christians: and made such a slaughter at Arle, that a heape then made of the bones of the deade carkasses remaineth there yet to this day in a place called Alies Campi. Th^e went he with his army against Eudo who began again to gather moze strength & make a new commociō. He besieged Tolose the chiefe Citie of Gallia Gottica: in which siege, (for that the citie was very well ramppered and fortified with Ditches & walles, and also well

Fraunce thus
ruined by
Saracens.

Burdeaux taken and diuers other Cities and Townes.

well stozed with Engins and munitions of war and with all sorts of weapons beside a conuenient Garrison of souldiours with all other thinges necessarie there planted for defence) the Saracenes receiued great losse and were well payde home, especially by meanes of certayne Engins, deuised by skylfull arte of ingenious Architectes and by diuers other Stratagemes of warlike pollicie. Notwithstanding, Burdeaux was then taken and sacked of the Saracenes, and all the Inhabitauntes therein both man woman and childe vnmmercifully slayne and manquelled, and the Temples razed and laide euen with the ground. Thence by the confines of Perigot beyonde the ryuer Geronde, they made inroades into the Countrey of Xantongue and destroyed Angolisme and Blaye: From thence through Limosin and Poytiers they rushed into the Countrey of Tours, where they spoyled the Church of Saint Martine, wherein was great forson and plenty of gyftes and offeringes that had bene geuen and bequeathed vnto it, and after ward set it on fire.

Great Raughter.

Eudo being soze afflicted with these vnmmanerly deailyngs, and ouen to great extremitie by the Saracenes, entred into league with Martellus, and they two (with both their powers ioyned in one) gaue battayle vnto Abderama befoze the Citie of Tours, wherein they discomfited hym and all his host. In this battayle there were slayne CCC. lxxv thousand Saracenes, and of the French no moe but .xv C. And if the night had not come vppon them ere the battayle was fully ended, the whole route of the Saracenes had bene at that time vtterly destroyed. For Abderama in the night season, perceiuinge how the game went, and what a mortall ouerthrow he had receiued, had no lust to farre and expect the hazard of the next day: but trudge as fast as he could, by long iourneies, with those fewe of his companie that were left and hable to folow him, to the Pyrennees, intendinge from thence to retourne

retourne into Spaine, leauing behinde hym in his Tents all his carriage and stufte for a praye to his Enemies. But the Nauarrians hauyng stopped the streight passages where their iourney laye, killed them euery one. The next day as soone as the Sonne was vp, Martellus in good order marshalled his army and toke the feld, awaiting the comyng of his enemies. But when he perfectlye vnderstode that they were fled, his souldiours fell to the spoyle, which they found in the Saracenes Campe most abundant and plentifull.

After the death of Eudo, Martellus added that parte of Eudo his Kingdome, to his Emppye. For which cause Hunold and Vaifar the sonnes of Eudo, incensinge that part of Gaule called Narbonensis Prouincia (containing the Countreys of Sauoye, Dolphinie, Prouance and Languedock) to take parte with them, renewed the warre afresh with Martellus. And passinge ouer the riuer of Rhone, with most barbarus cruelty destroyed, burnt and killed man and beast, makynge hauock of all Townes, Villages, & felds y was in their way, without sparing either age or sexe. The chief burnt of which lamentable stozme and furious immanitie, that part of the Allobroges (now called Dolphinie) specially felt, befoze Martellus could prouide or prepare sufficient power to go against them. But when he was come, Visigot departed into the wast desert and wilbernesse whiche hee hymselfe had so made, and concluding a league with y Saracenes moze aduisedly and warely then Eudo befoze had done, that is to wit, by geuing and receiuing hostages on both parties, he estsones procured them to come agayne into Fraunce: who now not with an host of bolde & tymorous, warlike and vnwarlike, armed and naked persones, one mingled with an other as befoze, but with army of lustye Hermitozs and picked souldiours thoroughly tryed by Sea and Land, well appointed and furnished with victuall and

all thinges necessary for such an enterpryse wherfore was cheife Capitaine one Atine, entred into the Province. And taking Auignion by treason of Maurice Capitayne thereof, they appoynted that Citie and Narbon to be the principall holdes and fortresses of their martiall proceedings. Whom as they were boldly swarming & straying abroad & Country, as men fearing no daunger, Childebrand (sent for that purpose by Martellus with a great power against them) immediately at his first commynge compelled to keepe within the walles of Auignion. Auignion is a Citie standing by the riuer Rhone, and was at that time strongly walled, and well fortified with many Bulwarkes, Castles and Tyles, insomuche that Atine valyauntly and polytically defendinge it, (as he was a man both couragious and stout and also skilfull in the arte of Cheualrye) thought it to be inexpugnable and not able to be wonne. For he had placed his Garrisons on euery side where he thought most expedient, and had planted the walles, Bulwarks and Castles full of weapons, Dartes and Engins to throwe stones into the throng of his Enemies, beside wylde fire and matches to kindle Torches and bzands to cast in their faces when so euer they should assay to enter. He had also manned the same wth hardy Souldiours, & saw sure watch & warde to be kept at the Gates, neither lackyng stoare of victuall nor any thing els that for the defence therof was needfull and requisite. Euery Capitayne, Centurion and decurion had their places and offices appoynted vnto them accordingly. He himselfe in person went about and viewed the watches, for feare least any thing by negligence or ouersight of his officers were amisse, a man that coulde well away with labour, watching and hunger, and such a one as kept his souldiours in due order and dutie by his owne example, rather then for feare of punishment, anymatyng and encouraging them to valyaunt enterpryses,

and

Two bal-
sunt & skil-
full Cap-
taines com-
pared toge-
ther, Atine
the saracen
and Martel-
lus & French.

and martiall aduentures. Childebrand lodging his camp nearer to the citie, gaue assault therevnto: whom Atine not onely repulsed but also enforced to dis campe & remoue his Armye furder of.

But when Martellus with his retinue and traine was come & both the hostes ioyned in one, after he had surueied and taken view of the situation and strength of the citie and thoroughly vnderstood of the valiaunt courage of the defenders within, he speedely & with vndaunted courage setting forward his matters, not only dzaue the as they issued out of the towne within the walles againe, but also wan to the place where his army had befoze pight, & there strongly encamped he himselfe. For Martellus being a man singularly wel skilled in warlike affaires, had vnder him in his army such capitaines and souldiours as had bene in many bloody battailes experienced & in sundry warres vnder him practised: furthermore very pzeise obseruers of martiall discipline wherin he himselfe had trained & instructed them. Who whether the Army were to be lodged and embattailed or the camp to be remoued, or themselves to be ranked & set in array ready for the fight, knewe euery man his office, place & service only wth a beck or a signe geuen them by their Generall. When their camp should be fortified for feare of being sodenly surprized by the enemy, immediately a man should haue scene some, wth al diligence busied in perusing & surueying the place the General had assigned, some to see souldiours in good order, some to entrench the camp, some to pitch their tentes, some to place the watch and assigne them their standinges, some ready marshalled without the Trench ready to repulse the Enemy if he should make any sodaine irruption vpon the labourers. If case stode, for the Campe to be remoued, euery man semblablye knewe his office and dutie. If they marched out to fight, euery one knewe at his Fingers ende, where and in what Ranke or place hee should

The second Booke

stande so that the forme and fashon were tolde them by their Chienetane, how he would haue the battayle ordered and appointed, and looke where they stode and set their foote in the fight, there would they rather haue dyed then to haue left it or shonke one foote backe, so desirous were they to wyne praise and glozie. If they should besiege any towne, some brought the scaling ladders, some Turrettes, some Bastyles and clymbling brydges surmounting the height of the Towne walles, stryuing who should first goe vp and mount vpon the walles. When they had got the Towne, they neuer brake their aray for any pylage or spoyle, nor for any greedines of bootie and pzaie, they neuer ceased to occupie their blades and lay about them with their falcions, till they had thzoughly ouercome all such of their enemyes as would not deliuer their weapons.

With such a godly trained host, Martellus aduancing his Standard and appzoching his enemies, while the anger of his Souldiours was hoate and the courage of their mindes yet freshe & vnappaulled, as one that well knew the nature of his Countrey men, who at the first bzunt as long as an iniurie is fresh in memozie and their mindes with venturous anymositie and hope of victozie, goggled are most fierce and hardie: but within a shozte while if the warre continue any thing long, their former boate forwardnes will be straightwayes abated and tourned into such keye colde quietnes that whereas afoze they seemed Lyons, then woulde they bee as meeke and fractable as Lambes, geuing therfoze no time of rest to his Souldiours, but onely so much as nedes must be had to refresh their bodies, with meate, dzinke and slepe, he softened the bloudie blast to the battaile, and gaue them a signe couragiously to giue the onset but first he whetted them and stirred vp their stomackes with this Dzation following.

38

Of the Saracen Historie. 49

If your ballaunt hearts (most louing Souldiours and felowes in Armes) were not sufficiently already to mee knowen by the manifold aduentures and perilles in my companie to your perpetuall praise exployted, or if our enemyes were vnto vs straunge & vnknowen then would I go about with many wordes to incense and pzicke you forward: but sithens I haue experimented and tryed you in so many battayles inuincible, & that of late yeres you easily vanquished this very same enemye, (few of them left a liue) at what time they inuaded the whole Realme of Fraunce with a farre greater armie then they haue now, in hope to haue enioyed the Emprye & Dominion thereof to themselves: I well see that I haue no neede to stande long in putting you in hope of victozie, which I perfectly know to be alreadye most certain in your hands, whereof the manifold examples of so many famous battailles happily and victoriously vnder our leading & conduct by you atchieued, may put you in an vndoubted assurance. Unlesse peraduenture some will thinke it to be a harder matter for vs nowe to ouercome these fewe (which like fearefull Hares) hyde and include themselves within walles: then it was for vs heretofore in the Countrey of Tours, to discomfite the whole power almost of all the Dzient. As though Walles were of more force in Warres, then foure hundred thousand fighting men, whose swozdes and armour if they had bene layd together in one heape, had bene hable to haue compassed this Citie about wyth a hygher and thicker bulwarke then these Walles which you see are. Men (belæue mee) seeke their defence not in Walles but in theyr weapons. Whereas they which put their trust in Walles, when they be dzynen to that pushe that they see themselves ouercome, their heartes fayle them, they runne away lyke the fearefull Deere, eyther casting downe their weapons, or else stande stone still dismayed

P.iii.

and

and amazed lyke sheepe. Addresse your selues therfore
to the assaulte lyke men, assuring your selues to synde
suche great plentie of spoyle therein, that you shall fare
the better all the dayes of your liues. Daunt and oppresse
yonder odious and vile generatiō y are included in hoales
& dennes like birdes in a cage. Take your former vigour
and accustomed stomacks vnto you, and know ye y I am
he, which (ouer & beside their share and bootie of y spoyle)
will amply w my owne hands reward all them y in this
assault shal behaue theselues valiauntly. I my selfe will
not start one fote frō you, but will helpe you not only w
my aduise and pollicie, but also w boughtie blowes giuen
with mine owne arme as I am wont alwayes at a pinch
to do where I see neede. I wil be (I say) both the witnesse
bearer and the Judge of your valiaūce on euery side, and
wil see you to suffer no worse extremitie, and wrong, the
I my self wil be content to participate with you. Quaiūce
I say once againe, mount vp liuely vpon yonder wall,
(which done) you shalbe sure to be celebrated and renown
med of all men, as they that twyle, haue deliuered and
protected their Countrey of Fraunce out of the thral
dome of a blasphemous Crue of cursed Sathanistes.

When he had made an ende, the Souldiours al toge
ther gaue a great shout, and then began the assault, the
walles were couragiously shaken and battered, ladders,
turrettes & bridges set vp, the assault geue in thre seue
rall places & the whole army diuided into iij parts, wher
of one was lead by Childebrād, another by Charlemaine
the sonne of Martellus, & the thir by Martellus himself.
The Saracens rowlling downe great stones which they
had for the same purpose prepared, tumbled downe y sca
ling ladders & brake them a sunder, shot arrowes among
the Assaylaunts as fast as haille, & threwo pots of scalding
pitch vpon them that appoched any thing nēre, finally no
kind of weapō was voccupied. Aciue himselfe goyng a
bout euery cozner, chæring by his Souldiours on euery
side

side, & diligently looking y nothing were amisse, played y
part both of a skilfull Captaine & also of a valiaunt souldi
our: many, which of a high and hautie courage first scaled
the walles, felt y smart & reward of venturous audacitie,
and were slaine. Martellus seeing that his scaling ladders
were partly by his enemies & partly by the waight of his
owne souldiours clinning by thick and thre-fold broken
almost all in peeces, purposing to detrude and driue y de
fendauntes frō some part of the wall, erected a Tower of
wood, out of which, he shot w certaine deuised Engynes,
great waighty stones at the that stode vpon the wall and
in it he had placed a great sort of Archers, which with a
rowls kept y Oppidanēs so streit, y they durst not stād to
their tacklings, nor abide vpon the walles. This Turret
had a bridge which w a certain deuise in it, might both be
hoised vp on high & let downe low, vpon the which none
could ascend y stode on the ground. This Engine was co
uered all ouer with raw Dre hides & leather, that no fire
could do it hurt. This being w strength of mē set hard by
the walles (for it went vpon wheeles) y Bridge was set to
the top of y walles, and so within a little while, the wall
was ful on y side with French souldiours. The the bicke
ring being so soze & terrible on both parts, y it was harde
to decerne who shuld haue the victorie, at length fine force
and puissaunt māhod of the Frankes got the better & pre
uailed, who making a great shout, wet throughstitch with
their enterprize, some ascēding & mounting vpon y walles
by ladders, which couered & saued themselves frō harme
by holding their Targets close ouer their heades, till they
were gottē vp, killing or els throtling downe the defen
daūts, that resisted. The rest being without all hope of re
medie & victorie, priuely shifted euery man for himselfe.
Aciue w the head men & chief officers of his cōpany, em
barked theselues in Shippes readie in the ryuer Rhone
for y same intent, & sayled away w the streame in safety.

¶ Many

Many of them were slaine in the chase, many crushed to death with fallng one vppon an other, and many swim- myng after the Shippes that were now departynge and goynge awaye, were drowned and overwhelmed with surges. Atine with his Shippes takynge the sea, made his course directly to Narbon, a wealthy Citie and well fortified, standynge very commodiouse to receiue into it ayde from the Sea, wherein was planted an other Ga- rison of Saracenes. Whereof hearynge Martellus went also to oppugne and bessege it. So that now there was no lesse bickering & contention on both parties for the oppug- nation and propugnation of Narbon: the one side mea- nyng to win the citie, the other not intendynge so to lose it.

At whiche time Amorreus, an other Saracen Kinge byngynge a bande of newe ayde to succour the besseged Narbonians, was encountred by Martellus, at the ryuer Illiberis. Where betwene them was fought a sharp and bloudy battayle: but in the end the victorie fell to Mar- tellus, and Amorreus valiantly fightynge in the batwarde was slayne with all his company, insomuch that not one was left aliue to carie any newes home of their vniuer- sall mishappe and calamytie. When Atine vnderstode of this discomfiture, he and as many as were with hym at Narbon shipped themselves and departed out of the French Prouince and Countrey.

At this time, when the Moores were thus dzy- uen out of all Aquitanie, nyne of the chiefe Peeres of Martellus his Host, valyaunt men and hardye, warred vpon the Saracenes in Gotalonia: and Martellus dyed in whose roome his second Son Pipine succeded. In the orient Malsamas spoylyng and depopulating y borders of Thracia (which now is called Romania) toke a stronge Towne of Cappadocia named Cursianum. From thence making an other viage with an Army vnto the Streits of Caucasus, found the same so wel defended and fortified by

by the Vnnes or Turkes, that not daring to meddle with them, he retzred back agayne. And two yeres after, an o- ther army of Saracenes whereof was Generall one Eue- lit the Sonne of Maunias inuaded againe the Borders of Thracia, where after he had made great spoyle, he resour- ned againe into Syria. In which Prouince many thou- sands of Saracenes dyed of sundry diseases. Neuerthelesse they abstained nothing the more from making inuasions into the Territozyes y belonged to the Romane Empire. For Zulciminie with a buyge power the thyrde time pil- lered and harped Armenia and Thracia and toke the towne called Syderonium: after ward he went into Cap- padocia w 60000 men, and at the very same time Me- like and Batal with a hundred thousand Saracens bzake the fourth time into Thracia. But Leo then Emperour, marchynge with an Host against them that wasted Thra- cia, destroyed and slew them almost euery one. About this time died Euclid, in whose place was created Bys- shop Gizit the seconde, in the yere of our Lorde 744. Who for that he saw the Romane Empire to be deuided into factions, because Constantine Copronymus y Son of Leo contended with Artabasdus for the Garland, addic- ted and bent his whole mind to dispose and set order in the Saracenical Empire. And because y Ile of Ciprus beyng then well peopled, bzued seditious motions and rustynge disturbaunces, he sent the whole people thereof into Sy- ria and left the Island without Inhabitanes. And when he had reigned one yere, he deceased. After him, Ices ob- tayned the pontificate, who also dying within lesse then a yere, Maruane was installed and made high Bishoppe.

Pipine the second bearing all the way and rulyng all the rest in the Realme of Fraunce, the Saracenes estones passinge the Pyrenes were by him surpysed and taken tarby, and payde so dearely for their lustinesse, that so long as he lyued, the neuer durste any more attempt any in- uasion

The second Booke

Charles

uasion of pillage towarde his land, Territoꝝ of domy-
nion, for which valpance and magnanimitie, the French-
me, by the assent of Zacharie then Pope of Rome deposed
Childerick to whome the crowne of Fraunce by lineall
descent of inheritance belonged, and made Pipine their
King: and with him annoynted as heire Apparaunt to
the Crowne, his Sonne Charles, who was after surna-
med the Great. Whom (afterward doyng many things
of his owne proper will and authoritie contrarie to his
Fathers minde and contentment, as though he had bene
already very Kinge and in reall possession of the Regall
Diademe) King Pipine his Father exiled out of his sight
and commaunded to departe out of all the limytes and
boundes of his Domynion and kingdome. Wherefore he
not darynge to disobey the kinge his Fathers decree and
iudgement, toke with hym many of the French po-
blytie which folowed hym, and went to Galasie Kinge
of Toledo, a Saracene bozne. Whiche Galasie vsed his
helpe, aduise and ayde in the warre whiche then he had a-
gainst Marsilius Kinge of Saragoza, a Saracene also as
well as he. In which warres Charles, being Chieue-
taine of all the King of Toledo his armye, behaued hym
selfe like a worthy knight, and many waies endamaged
King Marsilius.

Afterwarde fallynge in loue with Galiana Daughter
to the king his Master, aduentured and atchieued many
worthy enterprises & notozious Actes for her sake. name-
ly against Bramantes, another Saracen King. Who be-
cause he would haue had Galiana to his wife, maugre her
Parentes good wyl, besieged Toledo, and discomfited the
Souldiours both French & Saracene which serued vnder
the king of Toledo, till Charles yssuing out to recharge
vpon hym, cooped with him and slew him with his own
handes. This heat loue continewinge for a time, at
length brake out so far, y upon a certen time as y damsel
for

Of the Saracen Historie. 52

for her dispozt and solace was walkyng in the gardens of
baynes by the bankside of the riuer Tagus without the
walles of the cite Toledo (whiche are at this day called
the Palaces of Galiana) Charles no longer hable to quale-
fy his amozous passion, stole her away and fled with her
to Burdeaux, wher he buylded for her a sumptuous palace,
as lyke in all poyntes to the paterne and situation of the
pryncely Court of Toledo, as he could gesse, which palace
is yet extant, and called also by the name of Galiana her
Palace.

Maruane ruling in Syria, many sedicious mutines and
factious partakings chaunced among the Saracenes, & ma-
ny Tyrants rebelliously reuoluted, pretendinge title to
the pontificate. Whose names were Tebid, Dadack,
and Zulciminie. Whom Maruane as traytours to him
pursued, & toke Tebid and put hym to death: Zulciminie
hauing an ouerthrow, fled into Persia. But fortune smi-
led & fauored Dadack better then ether of y other twaine,
for he ioyning battayle w the Sonne of Maruane, van-
quished hym and discomfited his whole Host. Albeit
he could not long enioy the fruits of this victoꝝ, for win
awhile after, encounting w Maruane, himselfe in a cru-
ell battell was overcome and slaine. Constantine Copro-
nymus taking occasion and conceyuing hope of future good
lucke by meanes of y Saracens domestical sedition, infer-
red warre vpon Syria, & wanne a great part of that Pro-
uince. Wherefore Maruane hauinge now already gotten
the vpperhand of Dadack with al his Adherentes: tour-
ned his conquerous Armes to regayne Syria, and it re-
couered to y great slaughter & smart of y Christians. The
same yere, a litle before y Christians receiued this great
ouerthrow and discomfiture at the hands of Maruane, the
Countrey Syria, Palestina, almost al Asia, Thracia, Gre-
cia and Italie with many other Regions were terribly
shaken with a dreadfull Earthquake.

¶ ij

After

The second Booke

After this, more ruffling and commotion kindled in Persia, for Asmuline Prince and Kingleader of y^e Sect (first reised and excited by Mutar, of whom we haue before made mention who affirmed Ali to be greater then Mahomet) dwelling and living among the Corasenes, a people of Persia, though y^e counsaile & instinct of one Cataban, incensed and moued all the Slaues and Peyzants of the Countrey either priuely or apertly, by secrete conspiracie or by open force, to quell and murder their Masters. With whose wealth, the Slaues being enriched and made of great power, were diuided into two factions, wherof th^e one were called the Caismores, and th^e other the Lamonites. Now, Asmuline being Captaine of the Lamonites, subdued and cleane disperced the Caismores. Then beyng accompanied with his Lamonites and hys Counsellour Cataban, marched forth into Persia: ouer which Province was Lieutenaunt for Maruane one Iblin, who with an host of one C. thousand good fighting men and well appointed, resisted and gaue to Asmuline battayle. In which conflict, the Lamonites although they were a great deale fewer in number, yet hauing an indubitate confidence in the promises of Asmuline and in Cataban, whom they esteemed as men holy and replenished with propheticall inspiration, fought most valiantly, in so much that they discomfited Iblin and put hym to flight. Beyng then animated with so many victories, gloriously and happely atchieued, they were not afrayde to offer battayle vnto Maruane who had in his army iij. hundred thousand fighting Souldiours ready appointed in the fiede, nere to the Ryuer Zaban, whom also with all his army they discomfited. Maruane with foure thousand only of his company fled into Egypt, cutting downe the brydge where he passed ouer, that his enemies should not pursue and chase after him. But Saline the Sonne of Asmuline persecuted and folowed after him at his heeles and

Of the Saracen Historie. 53

and in Egypt in a bloudy battaile ouercame him, and thus was all the Maraunian Lynage and Pedagrew expelled. The remnauntes of whose lyne and Progenie which had flourished and reigned so many yeres were dispersed and scattered abroade, some fledde into Mauritania where being wearied, they planted themselves, and some went into Spaine. From this Asmuline afterward that house and family which now at this day raigneth in Persia, called Sophi is lineally descended.

After the death of Asmuline and Cataban, one Abubalan surnamed Muamat was Prince of Syria and Persia: and Saline of Egypt: and here began the first Emperre of the Sultanes or Souldanes of Egypt, which haue their imperiall Seate at Cayre. For by that name the Egyptian Caliphes would be called: which name (Sultan) by interpretatiō signifieth y^e highest Soueraigne Prince and King of Kings.

About the same time, dyed Pipine King of Fraunce, and Charles his sonne beganne his raigne in his fathers Steede. And among the Asturians, Alphonfus the sonne in Law of Pelagius, and surnamed Catholicus succeeded Fasila. This King recovered from the Saracenes in Galicia, Lucus, Tui and Asturica, in the Countrey called Campi, all that lyeth within the Ryuers Stola, Carrión, Pisuerra, and Duerro: in Castulonia, Simancas, Duengas, Amaia, Caniciars, Alesanium, Transniera, Supuerta and Carracia: in Lusitanie, Bracha, Viseum and Portum, (of whom & Gallicians compounded together, whiche are a people of the same Province) all Lusitanie is at this day called Portugall. He possessed many places, as Alaba, Ordugina, in Cantabria, whych Countrey is now called Biskaie: in Nauarra, Ruconia, Sarracacium and diuerse other places as farre as the Pyrence Mountaines. And when he had reigned eyghtene yeres he dyed, after

D. iij. whome

The second Booke

whom his Sonne Froila was saluted and crowned king. This man gaue an ouerthrow to the Saracens which had inuaded Galicia, wherein he slew their Captaine Omar with fiftie thousand others of his company, and compelled Ioseph king of Corduba to flee: and brought al the region of Galicia into his owne rule and iurisdiction. He beyng afterward by his owne Subiectes murdered, Aurelius his brothers sonne obtained the kingdome, of whom we reade no notable exploit done against the Saracens, and he also dyng within short space after his Coronation, his brother Silo was made king. Against him the Gallicians rebelled, wherefore because he might þ better subdue and bring the to reasonable conuoluntie, he concluded a peace with the Saracens. He reigned eight yeres and the dyed. After his death succeeded Alphonfus the second sonne of Froila

which Province was Lieutenant for Maruane one Iblin, who with an host of one C. thousand good fighting men and well appointed, resisted and gaue to Asmuline battayle. In which conflict, the Lamonites although they were a great deale fewer in number, yet hauing an indubitable confidence in the promises of Asmuline and in Cataban, whom they esteemed as men holy and replenished with propheticall inspiration, fought most valiantly, in so much that they discomfited Iblin and put hym to flight. Beyng then animated with so many victories, gloriously and happily atchieued, they were not asrayed to offer battayle vnto Maruane who had in his army th. hundred thousand fighting souldiours ready appointed in the felde, nere to the Ruer Zaban, whom also with all his army they discomfited. Maruane with foure thousand only of his company fled into Egypt, cutting downe the bridge where he passed ouer, that his enemies should not pursue and chase after him. But Saline the Sonne of Asmuline persecuted and folowed after him at his heeles and

Of the Saracen Historie. 54

Ledum was fought a terrible and sharpe battayle, but in the ende the Saracenes were overcome, and of them were slaine. lxx. thousande, beside a great number which were taken prisoners.

While these garboyles were in doyng in Spaine, the Saracenes in the Orient were deuided among themselves by intestine sedition and ciuill tumulte. For Abubalan ruling in Syria, many commotions and uprores were reysed against hym in Arabia, by the faction of deade Maruane, affirmyng and proclayming abroade that Maruane was not yet deade, and that therefore they put on Armour to restore him againe into his rightfull estate and regall dignitie. By reason of which rebellious stirre, many were slaine on both sides, and great depopulation committed.

After his death succeeded Alphonfus the second sonne of Froila

About the same time, dyed Pipine King of Fraunce, and Charles his sonne beganne his raigne in his fathers steede. And among the Asturians, Alphonfus the sonne in Law of Pelagius, and surnamed Catholicus succeeded Fasila. This King recovered from the Saracenes in Galicia, Lucus, Tui and Astorica, in the Countrey called Campi, all that lyeth within the Ryuers Scola, Carrion, Pisuerra, and Duerro: in Castulonia, Simancas, Duengas, Amaia, Caniciars, Alesanium, Transniera, Supuerta and Carracia: in Lusitanie, Bracha, Viscum and Portum, (of whom the Gallicians compounded together, whiche are a people of the same Province) all Lusitanie is at this day called Portugall. He fortified many places, as Alaba, Ordugina, in Cantabria, whych Countrey is now called Biskaie: in Nauarra, Ruconia, Sarraceasium and diuerse other places as farre as the Pyrenee Mountaines. And when he had reigned eyghtene yeres he dyed, after

The second Booke

whom his Sonne Froila was saluted and crowned king. This man gaue an ouerthrow to the Saracens which had inuaded Gallicia, wherein he slew their Captaine Omar with fiftie thousand others of his company, and compelled Ioseph king of Corduba to flee: and brought all the region of Gallicia into his owne rule and iurisdiction. He beyng afterward by his owne Subiectes murthered, Aurelius his brothers sonne obtained the kingdome, of whom we reade no notable exploit done against the Saracens, and he also dying within short space after his Coronation, his brother Silo was made king. Against him the Gallicians rebelled, wherfore because he might y^e better subdue and bring the to reasonable conformance, he concluded a peace with the Saracens. He reigned eight yeeres and the dyed. After wh^o, succeeded Alphonsus the second sonne of Froila, surnamed Castus, which was in the yeere of our Lord God. 780. Against him, by the counsaile and perswasion of his vncle Mauregate, the Saracens made warre. Thys Mauregate had promised vnto them, that if he myght by their meanes and helpe obtayne the kingdome of Lyon, which hys Predecessours and Ancestours befoze hym had enioyed, he would paye vnto them yeerely in the name of a tribute fyftie persons of noble race, and as many Virgins of baser birthe, with many other execrable and impious things. Whereupon, by the ayde of the Saracenes whiche furthered his pretence and quarell, with all their myght and power, he forcibly got Lyon with the whole kingdome thereof and it intrusively vsurped by the space of fyue yeeres. After whose deathe, Vermudeces, Sonne to hys brother Vimarane succeeded: who after two yeeres, voluntarily and of his owne free will restozed the kingdome to Alphonsus. Whych when the Saracenes vnderstode, they sent a great army agaynst hym, vnder the leading of Mucas: betwene whom, nere to a Towne named Lutum or

Ledum

Of the Saracen Historie. 54

Ledum was fought a terrible and sharpe battayle, but in the ende the Saracenes were overcome, and of them were slaine. lxx. thousande, beside a great number which were taken prisoners.

While these garboyles were in doyng in Spaine, the Saracenes in the Orient were deuised among themselves by intestine sedition and ciuill tumulte. For Abubalan ruling in Syria, many commotions and uprores were reysed agaynst hym in Arabia, by the faction of deade Maruane, affirmyng and proclaymyng abroade that Maruane was not yet deade, and that therefore they put on Armour to restore him againe into hys rightfull estate and regall dignitie. By reason of which rebellious stirre, many were slayne on both sydes, and great depopulation committed.

After the deathe of Abubalan, his brother Abedela succeeded, who was traiterously and insidiously murthered by an other Abedela, which aspyzed to the Byshoppyke, hoppyng to enioye it after hys decease as hee dyd in dede. During whose Raigne and Emperre, the Turkishe broode and Nation breaking cat of the Streites of Caucasus about the yeere of oure Lord. 800. made roades and incursions into Armenia, and when they had piteously spoyled and sacked it, they returned into their owne Countrey. And the yeere folowing, they vsued oute in great Plumpes, and fought with the Saracenes so long, till manye being slaine on bothe parties, the nyght made them to surceasse and make an ende of their battaille. Abedela the seconde of that name, in the eightenth yeere of his raigne dyed, in whose place succeeded hys Sonne Madi. Who without any notable thing in all his tyme atchived, dyed, when he had reigned ix. yeeres, leauyng behind him for his Heire and successor, his sonne Moyles. Who in the second yeere of his raigne dyed: and in his rone was

created

The second Booke

created Caliph one Aaron. But now to retourne to the affaires of the Occident.

Charles the
Great.

Ibnabala King of Saragoza, being expelled and driven out of his Countrey by the other Princes of the Saracenes in Spayne, came into Fraunce to King Charles, to imploze and desire ayd of hym, to reuenge the iniurie vnto hym done: and at the same time also, Ambassadors came to the same Charles from Alphonfus surnamed Castus, King of Asturias, to incense and moue hym to warre vpon the Saracenes in Spaine and to set the Countrey in good order, and by his promise to deliuer it out of the clutches of Tyrannicall vsurpers. Charles therefore gathering together not only the power of his owne kingdom but also hauinge a supplie of foraine aide, among whome were certaine younge Gentlemen of the Danes (which profered their seruice to accompaignie him, partly for a desire that they had to bellicall affaires, and partly to shewe their promise and couragious stomaches) with an Host not very huge and populous in number, but yet competent inough and such as were skilful Souldiours and expert Capitaines, passed ouer the Pyrennees by Roncevall without resistance or stoppe of any man. And entring within the frontiers and borders of Nauarre, pitched his Pavilions before Pompelon, the head Citie of the kingdom of the Cantabrians. Which Citie the saracenes had strongly fortified with a mighty Garrison. And for that they had bene already sufficiently schooled in the auncient tricks and feates of Spayne, they would no more commit the event of their good or ill Fortune to the hazard of one entire battaille as they had before done, but determined to protract and lenger out the warre with delays, tergiversacions and skirmishes where they might espie their best aduantage. Charles dispatched and sent an Herald at armes to summon the Towne, & to know whether they would yelde or els abide the doubtfull hazard

Of the Saracen Historie. 55

of war. They first, asked a tyme to consult among themselves what were best to doe, ere they would resolutelye answer to the Sumaunce. Vnto whom was granted the space of one day, wherein they demaunded and entreated that they might haue space graunted to send to their kings Friends and Confederates, and geue them to vnderstand of their distresse, so that if they were not rescued and the siege reysed within xv. dayes, then they would wyllingly yelde themselves and their Citie into his hands. Alledgyng, that it should be much for the auaille and commoditye of the French, to conquere and wyne the Citie, being vnpershyed and neither by the Conquerour in his rage nge made defaced, nor by the conquered defendaunt, through desperation blemished and disfigured. Neither that this taryance should in any poynte hinder his Proceedings, but rather be greatly beneficiall for hym. For why, though he bent all the force he was able to make against the Citie, yet was it able to holde hym out for so many dayes as they craued. And furthermore that the French, if their Fortune were to get the vpperhande in sight of their Friends that came to succour them, should with a worde onely commaunde the Porteculles and strong grated Gates of the Citie to be broken downe & opened for them quietly to enter, whiche shoulde be much for the honour, Dignitie, and profite of both parties: least otherwise, those innocent Cities that haue committed no fault, for whose deliuerie and regaignynge the French protested themselves to be come, should suffer such ruthless and iniurious examples of warre on both sides, as the nature and insolencie of a Siege necessarilye bringeth.

Charles presently perceiuing all these protestations and surmises of the Saracenes to be subtilly and craftelye deuised for none other entent, but onely to abate the heat and courage of his Souldiours (being now most sharply

it

set

The second Booke

set to haue their purpose) by protracting the time and geuyng longer day, would in no wise agree to graunt them any respite to make any further preparation and purueighaunce for war, which might peradventure tourne hym to greater inconuenience afterwarde, but immediately sendeth defiance agaiast them, and commaundeth his Souldiours to prouide and make ready such thinges as to the battre and siege of the Citie were requisite.

The Siege of this Citie continued many dayes, and diuers assaultes fiercely geuen. The Assaultes were not so buisie without, but the Defendaunts were as diligent within many times yssuing out of their Gates, not after the Arabian guyle, but accordinge to the Spanish manner, armed with sword and fire, quick, swift, nimble and sodaine, deluding their enemyes, with many stratagemes and subtyll policies, facing and shifting from place to place, yettermittinge no occasion that made for their purpose, dealing euer ywhere and at all times so deceiueablye, that when the other partye thought themselves surest of their purpose, they were fardest of, and when their desires were likeliest (as they thought) to sorte to effect, then were they soonest beguiled and lykely themselves to fall into the lappes of their enemyes: so secret and speedy, that they were many times in the midst of their enemyes slaying among them before any man suspected their coming, killing them and setting fire in their tentes and gone againe out of sight, ere any resistance could be made or any time to go against them. They skirmished & ruffled wth their enemyes, in a maner within their owne tentes. And although there was a band appointed at y gates of the Citie to keepe them from cominge out, yet (notwithstanding) they could not be so pent in, nor debarred from their purposes, but with lyke boldnesse as afoze, they would often set vpon them, and by no meanes wolde be brought to kepe wthin y wals of the citie, til y same wer thoroughly entrenched and rampired, and all their works within

Of the Saracen Historie. 56

within, finished to their minde. The did they stand at defiance valiantly, not as men defending their manhood with walles, but keepyng & defending their walles with manhood. This Siege contynuing somewhat longe, the other kings which were daily looked for to reyle the siege, came in deed, albeit furnished with any host, able to fight a maine battaile, but euer as they espyed any aduantage or occasion, they would make out Minilaunces and light Horsemen by knowen pathes and wales, to annoy King Charles. Which Horsemen oftener by night then by day alittle disquieted his Campe, and made some disturbance and outcries therein. An other crewe of them killyng the watchmen & perforce making way through their enemyes Bulwarkes and Fortifications, entred the citie, & greatly relieved them within, whereby they conceived great hope of future successe. Charles wth a courage vnappauled and inuincible exhortyng his men, tolde them that the victory was to be obtained with paines taking & vigilancie, that martiall prowesse appeareth not only in the encounter and conflict, but a great deale rather in good discipline and obseruance of martiall orders, not to be lulled in ease and securitie, bestowing the greatest part of the night in sleepe and bodely rest, but in studie and deuise for the achievement of their waighthe businesse, & in the day time incessantly to be busied, abstaining from riot & libidinous lustes & enermore abandoning weyres and lingering of time. Geuyng them further to vnderstand, y y cages and walles wherein those Sathanistes had enclosed themselves for their sauegard, must either perforce be broke in peces & beaten downe about their eares, or els y enemyes themselves to be tamed and brought vnder awfull obedience. Wherefore he bad them to aduance their standards & with banners displaid, to march against the, & not suffer them to rest. When was ther made fortifications & habiliments, to serue ech way and on euery side, whereby their Camp was kept both before, behind and on either side.

¶ ij

¶ When

The second Booke

When they that fished and raunged out as they did befoze, were faine to hyde their heades within their Fortresse, or els were shamfully compelled to retire, and so the matter was brought to a perfect Siege. When beganne there a sharpe and terrible battre which continued day and night without intermission, fresh Souldiours euer coming in the places of y^e weary, and fighting by course one after an other rounde aboute, with all kinde of deuises Engins, Ordnance, Ladders, Bridges, pollicie and valyauntnes, in somuch that y^e Saracenes courage being wel cooled, were now dismayd & at their wits end, not hable to hold out any longer, but on euery side (do what they could) were by the valyant French Assaylaunts thzowen downe from the walles or els slayne out of hand. Within the Citie also there was a great slaughter of them, vntill the King had made proclamation that as many as were vnarmed and without weapon should be spared.

King
Charles cou-
red the sara-
cens courage

When so, the Saracenes, euer befoze that time, choosinge and accustomed rather to die then to yeld as long as they had weapon & Armure, thzewe downe their weapons, and vpon their knees holoyng vp their vnarmed hands be sought pardon. When were the walles rased and the citie sacked. From thence the Campe remoued and went to Saragoza the head Citie of the Province Taraconensis: which beinge terrifyed and feared by the example afoze, straightway condescended and agreed to accept the offers and conditions propounded vnto them, which was that they shoulde admitte and receaue into their Citie such as preached the glad tydings of the Gospell of God, and receaue againe Ibnabala their King, and hym to acknowledge and obey as their Soueraigne Lord. After this, he went into Gottalonia, & compelled the two Kings of y^e Province (which were accused to haue expelled Ibnabala out of his kingdome) Abucan & Daisseze to come into his Paullion with Giftes and presents, & condescended

Of the Saracen Historie. 57

to become Tributaries. Thus his name was had in feare and awe thzoughout all Spaine. But when he was returned home agayne into Fraunce, some write that there came out of Aphrica, one Agoland, sent from the high Duke of the Aphrican Saracens, who kept his Seat royall at Marrocco) with a mighty army, to recouer all such Townes and places as Charles had taken in Spaine: with whom there were many other Princes, Potentats and valyaunt personages. And that Charles (after many combates, darraigned and foughten with hym hand to hand beinge thereunto by hym chalenged and prouoked) fought a bloody battayle with hym at Baion, a Citie of Vasconia, wherein were slayne 400000. Christians, and among them Myles Anglere Father to Rouland, a stout Gentleman and a hardy, who had the leadiinge and was Generall of the whole Army. Notwithstanding, all was regained by the puyssance and prowesse of Charles, and other fresh ayd that then came euen in the nicke out of Italy to succour the Frenchman in that distresse. Inso- much that Agoland pryncely fled and conueighed himselfe away.

But not long after, hauinge repaired his army with a supplie of moe Souldiours, Agoland againe prouoked Charles into Vasconia, and besieged the Citie Gennum now called Baion the space of seuen Monthes, and departing thence was in the borders of Xantongue in a cruell battel ouerthzowen, after which discomfiture he fled back againe into Spaine. And how that Charles (because he would at length bring his Spanissh warres to an end) wth a greater army then any afoze, entred into Spaine, where after many light skirmishes, he slew Agoland in a notable battell: after which victorie he brought vnder his subjection and rule almost all Spaine: with many moe forged reportes and mere fables of some aduouches, all which, for the vntruth and vnlikelyhood thereof we do heare pre-

termi

The second Booke

termitt. But if any be desirous to see them, let them reade Turpine Byschoppe of Rhemes, to whom also I do referre you, for the trueth of this which we haue here last recited. For we doe not fynde in any of those credible and approued wyters whych wee folowe, that Charles made any moe voyages against the Saracenes into Spaine but one, nor that they euer entred into Fraunce during his Reigne. But this is manifest, that Alphonsus King of Asturia, moued with the famous renowne of his noble Actes and invincible valiaunce, and for the common weale of his Kingdome and Subiectes, because he had no Children of his owne, and saw that the power of that onely Region was farre vntable to beare out and maintaine continuall warres wth the Saracens, offered vnto him secretly by trustie Messengers and Ambassadors the Kingdome of Lyon, so that he would ayde hym against the King of Corduba, wth whom he had then waged Warre. Charles accepting this offer and condition, sent ayde vnto hym. Which composition when the Nobles and Peeres of the Realme of Lyon vnderstoode, they were sore displeased and toke the matter greuously, spighting (as commonly in like cases it falleth out) to haue a Nation hard vnder theyr noses to be rulers ouer them, and therupon they compelled theyr King to starte from his Bargaine and vndo his League. And not so contented to leane, purposed also and deuised which way to dispatch and destroye King Charles and all his Army: feareng, least he seeing himselfe thus beluded and mocked would, reuenge this iniurie done vnto him. Wherefore gathering and assembling all the power of the Asturians and Cantabrians together, and sending also for ayde to the Saracenes (in secreete wise preventing Charles) tooke and kept the narrow Streights of the Mountaines: where the passage & way lyeth into Spaine by Roncuall. For Charles

was

Of the Saracen Historie. 58

was returned into Fraunce, and was now againe in his way going into Spaine, to reuenge this wrongfull dealing. The Armie of King Charles was then at the foote of the Pyrence Mountaines on that side next Fraunce, in the valley (yet called Hospita) when there came newes vnto them, that the Spaniards were comming in warlike maner against him along by the valley called at this day Charles Valley, which was a faire plaine Châpaine. Wherefore diuiding his host into three Battailles, by the fraudulent & traiterous counsaile of Galerō (or as some call him Gane) who the enemies had corrupted with money, he appointed Rouland his Nephew by his Sister, (commonly called of y vulgar sort Orland) Duke of little Britaine, a valiaunt Gentleman and a hardy, to leade y vanguard, wherein he placed al the noble States & Peeres of Fraunce: in y second battaille, he placed innumerable Gentlemen and noble Perlorages: and he himselfe wth y third (wherin was the traitour Galerō) taried stil in y campe, commanding Orland wth the vanguard to aduance himselfe forward. The Spanish army was embattailed in Roncuall, expecting their coming. Upon, who the fronte of the French host geuing the onset, was at y first brunt so handled (for the Spanyardes had gotten the vpper ground and al y trait passages) y they were in worse case which escaped their hands, then they which were slain outright in fighting: for they dyed & were quickly out of pain, but the other fleeing through thicke & thinnie among y stones and craggy Clines & falling down fro high Rocks, had their limmes broke, & so continued for a longer season in extreme torment and agonies. Thus, Rouland & all his traine being wearied, what wth climbing vp the hill, and what wth the waight of their armour were easely killed and brought to confusio. After the same maner also was y second battaille handled, wherein were y 12. Peeres of Fraunce, in whose power it is to create the king & decide al waigh, the causes of the Realme.

Charles

xlii. Peeres
of Fraunce

The second Booke

Charles still abode in the Valley, which for this cause is to this day called Charles Valley, whyther he had removed his Campe out of Hospira. Who understandinge of the great overthrow and losse of his Men, retzred with all speede againe into Fraunce. Alphonfus excused himselfe by Ambassadors vnto him, that all these thinges were attempted and done without his consent and knowledge, with whome Charles renewed the former amytie and league betwene them stroken and concluded. When deuisinge in his minde to procure an atonement and vniuersall peace to the whole world, sent his Ambassadors into Syria and Egypt, to conclude an amytie and peace with the Princes and Chiefe Rulers of the Infideles, to the ende that they should the better vse and entreate the Christians liuing vnder their subiection. Which he obtained, inso much that Aaron the high Caliph of Persia and Arabia) who not longe afoze, rufflingly inuadyng the Prouinces of Asia that were vnder the Constantinopolitane Empire with CCC. M. men, had enforced and by compulsion dyuen Nicephorus the emperour to redeeme and (as it were) to serue peace at his hands, by paying yearly an annuall fee in gold) from thenceforth not onely not infested and vexed the Christians, but also gaue yearly a great Masse and summe of moneye to the reliefe of those poore Captiues that liued vnder his rule, and also sent his Ambassadors with great rewardes to King Charles. For when Aaron had with many overthrowes and pillages miserably afflicted and frustred the Romane empyre, surprised and taken Tyana where he erected and dedicated a temple vnto Mahomet & an infinite numbze of towne moe: Nicephorus seeinge his matters goe to wzecke, and distrustinge any better fortune, sent his Letters to the Arabian to obteyne and request a peace accordinge to the tenour folowinge.

Why thou shouldst thus vniustlie warre againste me

Of the Saracen Historie. 59

me and my dominions sythens I haue not wzonged nor offended thee, or who they be that counsaile thee therunto, I know not, neither do I see any cause reasonable to moue thee, vnles it be peradventure, because thou hast a delight and pleasure in murther, robberie and rapine. For that thou doest it for religion sake, thou canst not pretend any excuse, sythens Machomet thy high Prophet, commaundeth you to vse and account al Christians as Brethren. Doest thou thinke that Almighty God the creatour of all thinges and the staie of both the People, whome he hath created and made after his owne similitude and lykenes, is delighted with effusion and shedding of innocent blood? God forbid. For your Prophet Mahomet did not commaund you to offere vnto him any such sacrifice or satisfactorie expiation. Else perchance dost thou inuade the territories and prouinces belonginge to other men, for some neede and want of Syluer, Golde and such other thinges? But alas, there is no such store of these thinges with vs: yea all precious iewelless and wares that are rare and hard to be gotten, are among you in great plenty. But if there be any thinge in our Countreys y may do thee pleasure, why dost thou not aske it frendly, and we will bestow the same vpon thee without delaye moste lovingly. If thou care not for man nor any force y moztall man can annoy thee with all, yet know thou that there is a God, which seeth and remembreth right and wzonge. For sythens we be moztall, it is not comely nor fitte for vs to beare immoztall grudge and enbelle enemytie one toward an other, & in that point to resemble the Diuell, which ever spighteth at mans felicity and soulehealth and is at perpetuall warre with all mankind.

With these lettres, sent not without rewardes and sumptuous presentes Aaron beinge appealed, sent agayne many presentes and gyftes to Nicephorus, & concluded a peace

peace with hym vpon a condition, that the Emperour should pay yerele vnto hym xxx. M. Crownes, and thre for his owne head, and as many for his Sonne and that he should not reedifie nor repayre such Townes as were rased and wasted by the saracenes. But in the performance of this agreement, there was les faith in y Greke then in the Barbarian. For Nicephorus after the departure of the Saracenes out of those townes, immediately reedified and fortifyed them. Which dealing when Aaron vnderstood, he furnished out an other Armye into Grecia, which tooke Thebes: and sendinge a Navy into Cyprus, subuerted the Churches and expulles the Cyprians. And when Aaron had reigned xxij. yeres he payed his debte to Nature, after whom succeeded in the Pontificate his Sonne Muamat. Who fallynge at moztall debate with his Brother Halad, and with him coapyng in conflicte wherein his side went to wack (For tune moze fauoring his Brothers part) grew to a composition w hym, y they twaine should ioynly w egal authoerty (hauing both one and the same tyle or style) enioy the Empire. When ther were created foure Tyzauntes whereof one had for his share Spayne, an other Aphrica, the third Egipt and the fourth Syria and Palestina. Wherevpon, the Saracenicall power began to decline, & for awhile y affayres of y Orient were indyfferently quiete among the Saracenes. And Muamat the Caliph of Syria woulde not now haue his imperiall Seat at Damasco, but buylded a newe citie nere where olde Babilon once stode, and called it Bagadat, and it constituted the Pontificall Sea of Syria and all the Orient: For the Persians were yet vnder his rule & iurisdiction. The Egiptian kept his residence at his Metropolitan Citie of Cayre: whiche was (as before we haue shewed) buylded nere the place where olde Memphis earst stode. Which after the Sea royall was in it appointed

pointed and kepte, so encreased, that at this daye it is thought to be one of the greatest Cities in the whole Worlde: the chiefe Sea of Aphrica was accounted by Elagleb to be at Caioran, whiche Citie was builde in Affrica when Ottmen had the regiment and gouernance of the Emperre, and is distaunte from the Citie of Tunic about an hundredth myles, and from the Sea thirtie and six.

Spaigne although it obeyed & had in it many kings, yet they all acknowledged the Byshop of Marrocco for their Diocesan: whiche is a Citie of Mauritanie Tingitana. He that gouerned Asyria was called the Caliph, whiche name signifieth a successeur: because he boasted and bragged himself to be the Successeur of Mahomet. The Egiptian Byshoppe was called the Sultane, and hee of Caioran, (lyke as the Assyrian dyd) named himself a Caliph: and hee of Marrocco by the auncient name of the Founder and buylder of that Citie, was named a Miralmumine. Under these, there also arose certayne other lesse Kingdomes in Affrica: as the Kingdom of Tunic, of Tripolis, of Algeria, of Oran, of Fes: and an innumerable sorte moe, lesse then these. For as euerye one was Ruler ouer anye Citie or Province. So he called hymselfe Kinge of the same, and possessing the stile and name thereof, as due by inheritance, leste and deliuered the same as it were by hand to his Succession and posteritye.

But yet notwithstandinge all these Kinges agnized and acknowledged some of these sozenamed Byshops: and as euerye one fauoured thys Byshoppe or that, so in hys quarrell dyd he make warre with the Kings of the other faction. Which sedicious discordes and multitude of Tyzauntes so appaired & weakened the power of the Saracenes that after the regiment of the aforesayde Byshoppes, they so decreased and theyr force so

So it was

was enabled, that at length the name of Saracenes gaue place and was almost cleane eatē by of the Turkes: and the state of their Emprye was at this time thzough the perturbation and burlyburly about the soueraigntie, so obscured and vnknownen, that no certaintie in the succession of their Emprye can be had, [no not among their owne wziters. Neuerthelesse, wee obseruing the due order of tymes, will as bziefely as may be, comprehend all such thinges as are confusedly wzitten by diuerse Authozs, concerning the actes and gestes by them atchieued.

In the tyme that this Muamat the Sonne of Aaron ruled Assyria, and Michael the Sonne in law of Nicephorus (expulser of Leo out of Armenia) was Emperour of Constantinople, one Thomas bzued a great garboyle and commotion. Of whom the report and fame is tolde after two wayes. Some saye he came of a very pooze and bale Parentage, and that he lyued long tymes in much pouertie and indigence, saine to get his lyuing with his handie labour, and sometyme with serulle bzudgerie. Afterward, abandoning his native Countrey and comming to Constantinople, was retained in the seruice of an Alderman of the Citie where the gracelesse verlet so much abused himselfe with carnall lust and vicious life, that he committed adultrie with his Mistresse, and dubbed the Alderman his maister, Knight of the common Hall. Which lewde pranke being detected and come to light, Thomas partly for starke shame and ignominie and partly for feare of the paynes and punishment appoynted by Law for suche as he was, fledde to the Saracenes: for whose Diuelishe deuises he was as fit an Organe and Instrument as any in the worlde: with whom, he was had in a great credite, speciallre after that his conuersation and behauiour a long tyme contynued and shewed among them (for he had nowe dwelled

dwelled among them. xrb. yeres) had geuen sufficient testimonie & put them in an assured opiniō of his fidelitie towardes them. Insomuch that renouncing and apostatizing his Chzistianitie and abiuring the holy Religion of the Chzistians, he embraced the horrible doctrine of Mahometicall Religion. And beyng by them appoynted Capitane of a competent Crew of warlike Souldiours was sent against the Chzistians. For he had promised vnto them, that if they would furnishe him out with some competent power, he would undertake to subdue the Romane Emprye into their handes. And least the Chzistians should haue any mistrust & diffidence in him thus working and contriuing the Woyle of their confusion, or peraduenture taking him as a straunger & sojurner giue no credite to his wordes, he named himself Constantine, the sonne of Irene. Which Constantine in very dede (for his crabbed nature and peruerse maners) his mother lōg befoze had bereft of both his eyes and of the Empire also, and was then dead.

Some others there be, which do affirme that this Thomas was whilome in the houle of one Bardanius surnamed Turcus, together with Michael and Leo. At what time soiourning at a place called Philomelium, & seeking by all meanes how to make himselfe Emperour, he discovered his counsaile and opened the very bottome of his stomacke to a certaine Monke skilfull in the prediction of fortunes and things to come, to which deuise and plat he made Leo Armenus priuie. Vnto whome the Monke tolde, that if he first aspired to the Emprye, he should lose both hys eyes and his worldly dignitie: but of them, that bzought hym his horse, the first and second should enioy the Diademe, and the thirde should bee proclaymed Emperour: but not hable to compasse and thzoughly bzying about, his desired purpose, he should shortly perishe and be bzought to confusion.

S.iii.

The

Thomas a
ranke sedi-
cious trat-
tor, and fil-
thy villain.

The second Booke

The first was Leo, the second Michael, and the third this Thomas whom Leo the Emperour made Colonell ouer the Band of his Confederates. Which Leo, when Thomas vnderstoode to bee slaine by Michael, he partly to reuenge the death of him thzough whose beneuolence & goodwill he had bene pzomoted to diuerse dignities, and partlie to ease his owne Stomacke and bzing about the effect of his malicious mynde (foz Michael and he coulde neuer agrée but maligned one an other euen from their Adolescencie) raysed warre agaynst Michael, and first found the meanes to inueigle and rayse by the Orientall power (among whom he lyued) to take part wyth hym. Thus he gathered together an armie not of weaklings and vnerpert Souldiours, oz of a fewe in number, but hygge, Populous and hardie, of Saracenes, Moores, Indians, Medes, Persians, Assyrians, Armenians, Chaldees, Iberians, Zigians, Cabirians and diuerse other Nations. Of whom, some by compulsion accompanied hym in that Warre, some foz good will, some in hope of spoyle, and some foz a rooted malice and hatred agaynst Michael, who foz his froward nature and peruerse manners was generally hated of all men. Foz Thomas although he was lame on one of his fete, and a Barbarian bozne, yet foz his gray heares and auncient age he was reputed among them venerable and woꝝ shipfull, in famplier talke and conference very curteous and affable (whyche are the thinges that most of all wynneth the heartes of Souldiours) and foz bodely strength not inferiour to any.

He thus furnished with an armie of Saracenes, to whom he had pzomysed the Constantinopolitane Emprye, and also with a great power of Chzistians which ventured life limme and goods with him, violently inuaded and fozcibly got the possessiō of the Orient. And bzinging vnder his obedience the exacters of publique tributes

with

Of the Saracen Historie. 62

with great statelynesse of minde, folowed the chase of good fortune now seruing his turne and smyling vppon hym, Within a while, oꝝ a low Haskerd became a great Ruler and of a weake mungrell Dezaunt a mighty Potentate, by whom all Asia was with spoiling and pillage miserably afflicted. Some Cities foz feare ioygned syde with him, and confozmed themselves to his humour. Some because they would not reuolte from theyꝝ true Liege the Emperour, were spoyled and the inhabitauntes carped awaye Captue. So that there were none in all Asia but only the Opficians and Armenians which continued in their true allegiance. Foz which gratuitie & constant obedience, the Emperour released and frankly remitted vnto theꝝ their publique tribute called Fumariū. But Thomas was so puffed vp w this successe, y he pzesumptuously toke vpo him y name of Emperour: & was crowned with y Diademe at Antioche, by Iob Pastour oꝝ Bishop at that time of the Antiochene Congregatiō: whom he (to requite one good turne foz another) adopted foz his Sonne, and made as his fellowe and Coadiutour in the administration of the Emprye, and then chaunging his owne name called himselfe Constantine the Sonne of Irene the Emperesse.

The Emperour knowing of this new stirre and commotion made pzeparation foz warre: and sent one of his Lozdes with an Army nothing equall (God wot) noꝝ of power to match and encounter with his enemies: which was by Thomas discomfited and cleane ouerthrowē. After this, meeting with the Romane Flēte, toke y same, and with lxxx. M. men toke his way to Abydus, which is a Citty of Asia the lesse, standing vpon the Sea syde, spoyling and destroying all where he went, & burning to ashes not only poꝝe vplādish villages, but goodly towne and stronge Cities. And from thence in a very darke nyghte transfreted into Thracia, where many of the

Em

Emperours Souldiours reuoluted and fled dayly vnto hym. He put to flight and dzaue downe all the Emperours power sent against hym. Wherof were chief Capitaines Olbian and Catacella, and (lyke a ragynge Streame, violently runnyng downe from a Hyll) pzofigated both by Sea and Land and boze downe befoze him, an other wel apoynted Paury, manned out lykelike by the emperour against him. He burst asunder the yzon chayne that went ouerthwart the Hauen & so layd siege to the citie both by Sea and land. But pzeuaillyng nothing that way, he determined to winne his purpose by long siege, and soztiffyng his Campe in very good order, sent parte of his army to subdue the towne lying by the Coast of Euxine. This done, with the rest of his power (which was very great) he on euery side beclipped the citie with a mighty oppugnation and gaue thereto a terrible battery. But by the valyaunt courage of the Defendauntes, all his attempts were frustrate. And his Paury on the Sea by force of tempest was disperfed and disseuered, so that he was fayne to bynge his boast back agayne into Asia tyll the wynter were passed.

The Spring folowynge, he agayne returned to the same siege: but Michael being now better furnished and pzouided then hee was befoze both with a Paury of tall Shippes to scowze the Coastes and keepe the Seas, and also with an army of lusty souldiours by land, first assaied by diuers flights to vndermine Thomas his souldiours & to sollicite them to renouance and forsake their Capitaine but al was in vayne. Wherfoze setting all the Gates of the citie open, he sodenly with all his company issued out and set vpon Thomas suspectyng no such pzetence and matter, and him there discomfited, and his whole Fleete on the Sea also.

There was one Gregory, Cousen to Leo late Emperour, who with a crew of good fighting Souldiours ayded Thomas

mas, but now seeinge the world thus tourned, seperated forthwith his Souldiours aparte from the residue, in hope thereby to wyne the Emperours sauour and set vpon Thomas behinde. Whiche when Thomas espyed, being nothing therewith discouraged, nor yet therfoze remouing his strongly lodged Campe from the Citie, set vpon Gregorio with parte of his Army and him discomfited, who for his sauegard flying away, he caught in the chase and put to death. Then speeding himselfe into his Campe agayne, he addressed his letters abroad into all quarters, vntuly making report that he had gotten the vpperhand against Michael in battayle: and sent for the Paury that lay at Berycum, wherein were of Gallages and Hulkes to the number of CCC. L. Sayle, with all expedition to come vnto him, as though the matter should forthwith be tryed likewise by Sea. Which dyfte and commaundement when the Armyalles and Capitaines of the Romane Paury vnderstode and knew, they set vpon them at vnwares by night in the roade, when they lay at Anker, and with their sodayne comming, so scarred and affrayed the Mariners that they were at their wittes ende and knewe not how vpon such a sodayne to defend themselves: so that there many of them were by the Imperials taken, and many burnt, and very few escaped, which being quicke of sayle gott away and ioyned themselves to the other Army that was on the land.

While this terrestriall army lay befoze Constantino-ple, without any notable battayle sauing only many light skirmishes, and small bickeringes, wherein sometimes Fortune smiled and sometime frowned vpon either part, the same and reporte thereof was spread and bzuted throughout the world. In somuche that Mortago King of Bulgarie, (notwithstandinge the Emperoure for greedynesse and miserable sparing of his money as he

was

was

The second Booke

was by nature most couetous and a néere Prince, than-
kyng hym for his good wyll, had before refused his ayde
offeryng to assist him, saying that he had no néede therof)
partly because hee was desirous of Warre and spoyle
of his enemies, and partly to confirme the sojner thre
peeres League made with Leo Armenus, marched with
an Armye agaynst Thomas, and him in a place called
Cedocto, not farre from Constantinople where the two
armyes met, in Battayle quercame & vanquished, wher-
in many a man was slayne, and after the ende thereof
retourned home with many Prisoners and rich Booties.

When the Paue that Thomas had left at the Siege
heard of this notable discomfiture and ouerthrowe, they
all reuoluted from Thomas and submitted themselves to
the Emperour. Thomas gatheringe together the rem-
nant of his Armye that escaped vnkylled at the last con-
flict with Mortago, conducted them into a playne fælde
called Diabasis, distaunt certayne Furlonges from the
Cittie, a place very commodious and fit for excursions,
and for plentie of water very profitable. Where hee a-
new encamped. From thence makinge vagaries and
roades, he wasted and despoyled al the Emperours sump-
tuous buyldings and banqueting houses of pleasure stan-
ding in the Suburbes of the Cittie. The Emperoure ha-
uinge his Armye euery daye more and more encreased,
strake by Alarme and gaue the charge vpon him in thre
seuerall parts, whereby he thoroughly put al Thomas his
Armye to flight. For Thomas before had geuen com-
maundemente to his men, that at the firste onsette, they
should retyze and make a shewe as though they fled, and
afterward vpon the sodayne tourne agayne and recharge
vpon their enemies. After this discomfiture many of his
men fledde to the Emperour. Thomas with a few of his
adherents came in safetie to Adrianople and his adoptiue
son Anastasius escaping also by flight, toke for his saue-
garde

Of the Saracen Historie. 64

garde the Castell of Byzia. After whom the Emperour
without delay making pursuite, went firste to Adriano-
ple where Thomas was. And least the Scythians dwel-
lyng thereabout, should learne the knowledge of such en-
gyns and Artyllerie as serue for Battery and oppugna-
tion of Citties, he determyned by famine to driue them to
surrender and yelde, and so beclipped it rounde aboute
with a strong Siege.

The Cittie was well walled and beside that, surely en-
trenched and fortified with Bulwarkes. But they were
so pinched with Famine, that all their victualles beinge
spent, they secretly had conference with Michael and be-
ing at a poynte and composition with him for pardon of
this their rebellious conspiracie, deliuered Thomas into
his handes. The Emperour now hauinge in his possessi-
on his deadly enemye, obseruing y auncient custome of o-
ther Emperours in lyke cases, first made him to prostrate
himselfe vpon the Pauement and Stones, whiche done,
he set his fete vpon his necke, and trodde vpon hym.
Then he caused his fete and handes to be cutte of, and
so setting him vpon an Asse, commaunded him to be carped
about the Campe, for euery man to wonder at. Where-
at the miserable captiue said in howling for these wordes:
Haue mercie & compassion vpon me y y art y true King.
And when he was about, vpon y Emperours interroga-
tores & motions to haue betraied & accused certen of his
famyliers, as pryue and of counsel with him in this rus-
sling rebellion, the Emperour beinge aduised by Exam-
bulius one of his Nobles, that no credite ought in such ca-
ses to be geuen to a professed enemye, accusing the appo-
ued frendes of his Palettre, would not heare him. And
so geuing order for his execution, caused him, (longe lan-
guishing in terrible torments) to be put to death.

They that fled to Byzia, folowing the example of the
Adrianopolitanes, toke Anastasius and deliuered hym

The second Booke

bounde to the Emperour, who also was put to execution. This end had Thomas, whose histozie (although he were no Saracen) we thought good not here to omit, because he chiefly atchieued and perpetrated the same by the aide and power of the Saracens, insomuch that he might right well seeme to haue bene the Emperour and Kingleader of the Saracens.

While these things were in doing in the Orient, the Saracens in Spaine, most arrogantly by their Ambassadors demaunded of Ramire King of Asturias (who succeeded Alphonfus Castus) y^e Tribute which king Mauregat was wont to pay. Unto whom Ramire by the aduise of his priuie Counsell answered, that he had leiser dye a hundzeth deatnes then so to doe. And forthwith leuying an armie marched against them wasting and destroying their Territozies and Countreyes, as farre as Nagiera. Betwene whom and the Saracens was fought at Aluelda a soze battayle, and sozer had bene if the night had not made an ende of the same for that daye, wherein soasmuch as the Saracenes were lyker to haue the victozie: Ramire by night with his companie retyzed vnto a certaine hill nere Clauigium: and there greatly fearing the doome of Fortune the next day, and what woulde be fyde on him and his, after so vnluckie a beginning, sought his onely refuge at Gods handes, bestowing (both he and all his retinue) the whole night almost in watching and prayer to Almighty God for his assistaunce in that theyz greuous extremitie. Then and there (as some do saye) Saint James the Apostle seemed personally to appeare vnto him, promysing him his helpe and furtheraunce, wherebpon Ramire the next day comming into the field in good aray of battaile, against his enemies, with an assured confidence of Diuine helpe and assistance, the sayde holy Apostle Saint James was sene in the battayle, sitting vpon a white hoyle and bearing in his hande a redde Crosse

Of the Saracen Historie. 65

Crosse, and that in the same Battaille were slayne of Saracenes. lxx. thousand. Then were Albaida, Clauigium, Calagurra, and many other towne thereabout regained by the Chyistians: In token and remembrance of which victozie by the Diuine assistance of Celestiall presence atchieued, the Noble order of the Knightes of Sainte James was by the King instituted.

The Saracenes inhabytng the West parte of Spayne where Valentia standeth, pestred with multitude of people, and considering that y^e Countrey which was vnto the for their habitation allotted, was neither fruitfull nor wealthye, desired their highe Prince of Marrocco in Mauritania Tingitania whose name was Amerumen, to permit and lycense them to seeke some other place of dwelling, where they might moze commodiously roust: and whyther they might cary theyz people, and familie and plant themselves moze to their contentacions. Whose requestes their Prince, as one desirous of new alterations and chaunges of the world graunted: and furnishing them out of hande wyth a Hauie of Brigandines and Gallayes, partlye because he woulde staunch their greedie appetites wyth other mennes goods, and partlye because he woulde by this meanes trie and seeke out whether there were any fruitfull Soyle and fertile Island, whereinto he might conueniently deryue a Colonie of his owne people, sent them to the Isles of the Orient. They landed first in Corlica, but thence they were repulsed and dzyuen awaye by Abdemar, whom Pipine the Sonne of Charles the Great King of Italic, had sent wyth the Genaway flete agaynst them. In which conflicte, Abdemar most balauntly and manfully fighting was slayne. From thence saylyng to the Isles of Grecia (which were spoyled and disfurnished of the Hauie appoynted to keepe them, through the meanes of the Garrison that tooke parte

By whom & wherebpon y^e Knightes of y^e order of S. James were first instituted.

L. iij.

with

The second Booke

with Thomas) they sacked and robbed almost euery one of them vniuersally. Among all the rest, lykynge Creta best, both for fertilitie of the Countrey, and holmesomenes of Ayre, they laded theyr Shippes with pillage and retourned for that yere home againe, and in the Springe folowing, with .xl. fall Shippes well manned and appoynted for the warres, they hauyng a prosperous gale of wynde came straight agayne to Creta. And setting theyr men on lande at a Promontorie called euer after Carax, set theyr Shippes on fire, and there pitching their Tentes, strongly entrenched them selues, calling the place by the name of Candax. Against whom, the Emperour with all expedition sent a power vnder the conduct of Photinus Lieutenant of the Orient, and one Damianus who in a certaine skirmish against them, was slaine, whose death so much, asstonned and discouraged the residue, that they trusted to their legges and ranne awaye. When there came vnto them a certaine Monk out of the mountaynes of that Island, who tolde them that the place which they had chosen to builde a Citie vpon, was nothing fit for such a purpose: and withall, shewed vnto them a place, named Candaces, in all pointes farre moze commodious. Where they builded a Citie, which should be as the Castle and fortreffe of the whole Isle, and called it Candie. Out of which they made Roades and inuasions into the whole Isle, insomuch that within a shorte space they brought the same wholly into theyr subiection, dispossessing the inhabitauntes and carrying the Citizens away into Captiuitie. At which time, Cyrillus Bishop of Gortyne, suffered Martiridome for the protection and testimony of Iesus Christ, our only Saviour. An other name of the about the same time, attempted once againe the winning of Sardinia & Corsica: the which was encountred and vanquished about Sardinia by the power of Charles, the brother

Of the Saracen Historie. 66

brother of Pipine, being vnder the conduct of the Countie Bucharede, & v. M. of the saracens slaine, & all the rest of them after ward by him cleane pziuen out of Corsica.

Pipine hauyng warres with the Venetians, the Saracens in Spaine, taking occasion by the discorde and dissensions of the Christians to bring their owne matters to desired effect, sodainly inuaded Sardinia, from whence not long afoze, they had bene repulled with a notable slaughter & losse of their people. But staying not long there, they sodainly departed thence: cutting their course directly to Corsica. And sacking the Citie Aleria, beside the Bishop and a few other old men, all the other multitude & common sort they caried thence away to them. The Emperour Michael, sent out another Prauie wherof was Captain Craterus the Lieutenant of Cyberetes, against the Saracenes which roused & nestled in Crete. Who with .lxx. Sayle of his owne and an infinite number of Gallies of other Islandes, well manned & appointed, courageously landed in Crete: where he found the Saracens neuer a whit abashed of his arriuall, neither refusing by dent of sword and stroke of battaile to darraigne their quarell. Where vpon, they mette together in a place meete for such a purpose: where betwene the was fought a sharpe and cruell Battaille, lasting from the dawning of the day till sone, in such doubtfull fortune that hard it was to iudge, whether part in the end would carry away the victorie. But at length toward Euening the Saracens were overcome and fled: wherof many were slaine in the fildes but moze, thowing away their weapons were taken: insomuch that y daye theyr Citie was lyke to haue bene taken and wonne, if it had not bene so nere night. Which night and victorie was the destruction and ouerthrow of the Greekes as after ward shall appeere. For being now in their idleness and payze, hopyng the next day folowing to small labour, or none at all, to bring those fewe of theyr enemyes

get

The second Booke

Dronkenes
the cause of
a generall
mishap and
laughter.

yet left a liue into their power) gaue themselves to bibe, ynge, ryot and bellychere as though they had not bene in their enemies pzeincte and daunger but at home in their own houses, taking no regard to let their watch kept, or any other expedient order obserued: Insomuch that minding no other thing but sleepe, ease and slouth (the better ouerthrowers of al goodnes) they were set vpon in the dead time of the night, snoztinge with their Dronken nowles, by the Saracenes (who espyed the aduantage and oportunitie) and were slayne every Mothers sonne, not somuch as a Messenger left alieue to carry home newes of their ill spede. Onely Craterus the Captaine, imbar kinge himselfe in a Marchauntes Craer, sought to saue his life. But when the Chieftayne of the Saracenicall Armye after longe seekinge and tumblinge among the dead Carcasses and Prisoners could not finde him, knowing him then to be escaped and fled, sent in all post hast to pursue and hunt him out. Who being taken and apprehended in the Ile of Coo, was hanged vpon a Gibbet.

The Emperour Michael hearing these newes commanded Oryphia a wiseman and verie skillfull in Particall affaires to gather together the Prætorian Legion (which became euery souldiour of that Legion had for his wages xl. Crownes was then called Quadragenaria) and with them he spedde himselfe against the saracenes, whome he greatly endamaged, sometimes killinge them as they raunged licentiously and excursiuely abzoad into other Ilandes for spoyls, partly breaking out vpon them out of Stailes and Ambushes, layd for the nonce to intrap them; and partly by open combats & pitched battailes. He also cooled the courage and abated the pride, & immoderate audacitie of them that vsurped the Countrey of Crete.

At this time, there was one Euphemius, Capitayne of a certayne Band of Souldiours in Sicilie who not being able to master the lasciuious passions of inordinate loue, perforce

Of the Saracen Historie. 67

perforce took a virgin out of the Cloyster inber she was professed Nun, and had vowed chastitie from her tender age, and her by the example of his Lorde and Maister the emperour (who also had afozetime perpetrated y lyke enormity) rauished and carnally knew against her consent and wyll. For whiche impious acte, her Brothers made complaynt to the Emperour with humble request y this detestable exaple might not escape y penalty & punishment due for such a villanye. Whereupon the Emperour sent Commaundement to the Regent of Sicilie, that if this were true he should litte and cut of Euphemius his nose. Euphemius vnderstanding what sentence and iudgment the emperour had geue against him, entred into a conspiacie with his owne Souldiours and other Capitaynes besides, and they altogether fled to Ambulak Bysshop of the Saracenes in Mauritania. Promysing vnto him that if he might by his help and meanes be proclaymed Emperour of Romanes, he would deliuer and bring all Syccile in subiection vnder him, and woulde moreover paye vnto hym a great Tribute. Whiche offer and condition Ambulak not refusing, inuested hym with the tytle of Romane Emperour, and furnished him with a great Armye, by meanes whereof he wan the possession of Sicilie: but Euphemius making his progresse and walkes about Sicilie in the habit and stately gesture of Emperour, was at the Citie of Syracuse slaine.

Then began the Saracens to set foote into Calabria and diuers other partes of Italic, making therein great hauock and spoyls: of whom, one Paup perished and was cast away about the Coastes of Sardinia, the other (for there were two sent out) in fleeing wyse retourned home. Whiche caused Ambulak to conclude a peace with the French Kinge.

But within a while after, Bernard the Sonne of
Pipine

Inferiours
take exam-
ple of their
Superiours

The second Booke

Pipine reigning in Italy, & Saracens despising and reiecting the peace that Ambulak had made, invaded Corsica: who in their returne homwarde beinge laden and full fraught with booties and great stoze of Wyllage, were in the mayne Sea encountred by one Ermengarius, a man of great power in & greater of & Baleare Ilands, & to & be hisse of & king of Italy maintained a garison ther, by whos pzoewesse the Saracenes at the first onset were cleane discomfited and put to flight, and diuers of their Shipes intercepted and taken, beside 500. Christian Prisoners in them, which were rescued and saued. Notwithstandinge all this misfortune and discomfiture, the Saracens would rest, but coasting about Italic with their Fleet sodaynely landed and surpysed a towne, in the Coast of Hetruria, named Centumcel, whiche nowe is called the olde Citie. Which being so taken, they sacked and with Sworde and Fire defaced most rudely. From thence holding on their bioage toward Narbon they destroyed, harped and spoiled the Country al about, and that done invaded Sardinia where they practised all kinde of wast and robbery. But as they fetched their vagaries and licencious roades, Ermengarius agayne with the power of the Ile by hym assembled, vpon a sodayne gaue the charge vpon them, put them to flight, and with great slaughter on their side, draue them to the Sea, where for hast as they thicke and threfolde strided, who might first get a bozde they were killed downe right at the pleasure and full desire of their Enemies. Being thus greuously afflicted and hauynge lost a great part of their Paue, they waighed by their Sinker and sayled into Africa. And they which were in Sycile, hearinge that the Venetians (to gratysie the Constantinopolitan Emperoure) vnto whom that Ile was subiect) purposed to send a Paue against them, filled their Bagges and stuffed their powches with such spoyle and pray as they lyked and went their way.

After

Of the Saracen Historie. 68

After this, Haido whom Lewes Kinge of Fraunce and the Emperour had made Ruler of Aquitanie by treacherie and guylefull dealinge surpysed and ruffled the Citie Ausonia, and because he was not of power hymselfe to keepe the same, he pzocured ayde from the Spanish Saracens, by whose helpe he spoiled farre and nere both Aquitanie and the hither part of Spayne. Whose purpose and pzetence, Lewes within shorte space repzessed. And Alphonsis surnamed Magnus, Kinge of Asturia and Lyon, nere to the riuer Duerro banquished two Armies of the Saracenical King of Tolet, whiche were thither sent to besiege and oppugne the Citie of Lyon. Moreover hee rayled the Siege that the Saracenes had bent agaynst Coimbra, and set the same free from their dreadfull oppugnation.

And when hee was in buyldinge the Citie of Zamorra, the same Saracenes vnder the conducte and leadinge of a Prophet of theirs, named Alchama, came agaynst hym, whom he banquished, and of them slew a great number, and among the rest their Capitayne Alchama: and toke Abboaline prisoner, a Capitayne of great fame and estimation among them, who ransomed himselfe for 1200. Ducates and so was deliuered. With which money the Kinge newe buylded the famous Temple of S. James in Ouiedo of Parble, whiche was before but of Bricke.

But in Italic the Saracens had taken Palermo the most famous and noble Citie in all Sicile, neyther was there any man that woulde take vpon him to resiste their furious attemptes or once goe about to pzevent or repzesse their malycious deuoyzes, sauyng onely Boniface Countee of Corsica, who accompaigned with his Brother Beatrius and a fewe other of the Barons and Lords of Hetruria sayled into Aphrica and landynge betwene Vtica and Carthage slew so manie of his Enemies

Uij

in

A Church
buyld with
the money &
a Saracen
payde for
his ransom
come.

The second Booke

in foure cruell Battayles, that like as the Carthaginians whilome were enforced to call home Anniball out of Italic, so the Saracenes were faine to call home their people that were then in Sicile: and so Sicile was deliuered from the pestiferous oppzession and extreme daunger of Saracenicall Hostilitie. After which victozies gloriouly by Boniface atchieued, he with great soyson and plenty of pray and riche booties retourned home with his victorizous Paule out of Africa. But the Saracens could not in any saunce abyde to be long quiet, but within a while, wth a greater power and purssuance then at any time befoze, they inuaded Italic, and againe toke the Citie Centum-cell. From thence in post hast with a running Campe they spedde them toward Rome, and with little labour got the possession of Vaticanum, and after they had spoyled the goodly Church of S. Peter (which standeth in that place) and take away the Doores of Syluer which it had, of price and valew inestimable, they pzophaned it with fire and swoorde most sacrilegiouly. And taryng there certaine dayes they were fully bent to haue layd siege to the Citie, but hearing that an armie was leuyed and incomming against them out of Lumbardie they departed and ruthfully wasted al the Suburbes and villages néere the Citie that laye betwene the two wayes Appia and Latina. They spoyled and robbed the Cathedzal Church of S. Paule in the way called Via Ostiensis, and consumed the most part of it with fire: from thence turning into Latina Via, they spoylingly rushed into the pzeincle and Chase of Cassinum, and robbed the Temple of Cassinum of all the holy Dynamentes, Vestures, Reliques, and Gyftes whereof it had marueilous great store, and utterly ruynated a great part therof. Then keeping their way by the right side of the riuer Leire, they spedde them apace toward the Sea, in such populous blumpes, that they were like vnto a violent swift storme or terrible

Rome spoyled by the Saracens.

whirle.

Of the Saracen Historie. 69

whirlewinde: and fraughting their Shippes with their spoyles and booties, which lay there ready, they boyled vp theyr Sailes and launched into the maine Sea.

And in Hispaine, Abduramen King of Corduba entring into the borders of Biskaye, fought most valiantly and fiercely the space of a whole day with the Armies and power of Ordonius King of Lyon and Gartias & Ignigenius of Biskaye: and fortune seeming for that daye to dispose and encline the victorie to neither party, departed the Battaille. Ordonius meaning to requite & pay home Abduramen, entred into his Countrey, and subuerted the Towne of Cincilia, which is now called Santiliana. But in Asia, Imprael & Caliph of Syria, succeding Muamat, with a huge power brake into the confines and limittes of the Romane Emppze. Against whom, the Emperour Theophilus marched with his royall Army, and hauing in his company two most valiaunt Capitaynes Theophobus and Manuel, in whose prowesse and dexterity in armes he reposed his whole trust and confidence, was fully resolved and determined to giue vnto him battayle: of whose appzoche and comming, Imprael beeyng certessed whether he did it vpon an arrogance & disdain, or that he feared the euent and fortune of Battayle, leauing behinde him one Abuzachar with lxxx. thousande good fighting and well appointed men to try the quarell by stroke of mortall conflicte, departed and went by way with part of his Armye. The battayle beeyng toynd and clasped together, and the Saracenes getting the vpperhande, Theophilus wyth his Prætorian bande and two. m. Persians and Theophobus, escaped and attayned into the toppe of a little Hill, which being fiercely assayled and beset wyth Saracenes, whose onely desire was to take the Romane Emperour Prisoner, the Romane Souldiours most valiantly fighting for the safegarde and incolumitie of theyr Lorde

W. iij.

and

The second Booke

and Maister the Emperours sacred Maiestie, defended. The conflicte continued, sharply and desperately fought on both sides tyll the Euening. But as soone as night was come, Theophobus by a pretie sleight and Stratageme deluded the Saracenes and brought themselves out of that present danger and extremitie. For he commanded his Souldiours, as loud as they coude to shoute and make a noyse, and to sounde theyr Trumpettes and play vpon their Harpes and muscalle Instrumentes, as though there had come some freshe ayde and succour to releue and rescue them at that present pynche of distresse. Which deuise fell out accorpyng to his first imagination. For the Saracenes surely thinking that moze ayde was come, and fearing leaste they should be entrapped and on euery syde enclosed by their enemyes, discomped and remoued fure Pyles further of, and so the Emperour with all his retinewe and Hoast being deliuered out of danger, came safe to the residue of his Armye, whiche saued themselves by flight at the last conflicte. For which politique Stratageme and wyse shifte, the Emperour made Theophobus chiefe Generall and Lieutenaunt of the whole Armie. And the yeere folowing, makynge another voyage and expedition against the Saracenes, vanquished them in a notable Battayle at Charfianum, and so wyth twentie and fure thousande Prisoners he returned home.

Agayne, the thyrde yeere he leuyed his power and marched against them and ioyning Battayle with them was so circumvented and beset with his enemyes that he had almost fallen into theyr handes. Which danger of the Emperour, Manuel chiefe Capitaine of the Armye vnder him perceyuing, encouraged and incensed the mindes of his Souldiours with a vehement Oracion and

Of the Saracen Historie. 70

and made a way perforce to the place where the Emperour was distressed, and hym (beeyng now wearied and vtterly dyspayning of any escape or remedie, yet mynding to abyde the vtermost hazarde, rather then he woulde dismaye and leaue his Souldiours comfortlesse through his departure, saying that he woulde not by flight betray the lyues of his poore bassalles into the mercylesse salanntes of that wicked generation) deliuered and brought out of that danger, not without, threates and menaces that he woulde kill him, vnlesse he woulde consent to folow him openyng the way and passage for him to escape. And the fourthe tyme, both the Armyes wyth all theyr powers comming into the fielde without any notable thing done woorthie of remembzaunce, returned home. The fift yeere, Theophilus leadyng his Armye sarre within Syria, wastling and spoyling all the Countrey in his waie, wanne and Conquered Zozopetra the Countrey and Seate of Imprael, which so nettled and chaused Imprael, that he assembled all the power hee was hable to make wyth intent to invade Amorium the Countrey of Theophilus. His Armye mette all together at Tharsus: whither when Imprael himselfe was come, he sent his Sonne with parte of his Armye besoze, to skirmishe and dallye (as it were in the waye of an assaye) with the Romane Hoaste, whiche was lodged and encamped at Dorylaeum thre dayes iourney from Amorium. And vnto hym he appoynted tenne thousande Turkes and all the power of Armenia. Who beeyng thus furnished and appoynted wyth men and armour and encamped at Drazymenum, Theophilus went against him and lodged his Hoaste in a place called Auzin, purposing besoze he woulde ioyne any Battayle to espie and discover the multitude and number of his enemyes.

Being

The second Booke

Armie (soz that the Saracenes as though they had bene a frayde, kept their heades within the walles of their citie) was lulled in securitie, geuyng no regarde to orderly behauour, noz to the good keeping of their watch, the Saracenes all in armure bypon the thirde day after the Siege was planted, whē al y Romanē Souldiours were assembled & congregated together to heere diuine service (soz it was bypon a Sundaye) setting open their Gates and issuing out sodaynly, kyllēd and manquelled the Romans on euery side: insonmuch that the Emperoure himselfe had much a doo to escape, losing and leauyng behinde him all his carriage and prouision. And agayne within two yeres next after, the Saracenes entred within the dition and lymites of the Romane Empire with xxx. M. men, wherfore Michael meaning to wyne his Spurres againe & to be euen wth the saracens soz y foyle lately taken at their handes, leuied an Army of xlv. M. Thracians and Macedonians, and marched against them. Which when they knew, by daungerous iourneyes and compendious pathes they pzeuented his purpose, settinge vpon him sodaynly and at vnawares being in his iournay and out of order. Wherby he was discomfited and compelled to fleē. And at that time, they saye that Michael had fallen into the handes of his Enemies, if Manuel had not venturously entred and violentlye broken into the bzeast of the Enemies Armie and disturbinge their arate delyuered him from daunger.

Two yeres after this, Mamume the Son of Imprael beinge Caliph of Syria, the Saracenes with an Armie of xl. thousand men spoiled and ouerrunne Armenia and all the Sea coastes cruelly. At whiche time, the Caliph is reported to haue done as Xerxes longe afoze did, commaunding the Sea to be whipped and beaten with scourges, because it stopped his intent, that he could not haue

Of the Saracen Historie. 72

haue his will to go any further. Michael who could not with pacient minde bzoake and digest these iniuries, sent his Uncle Petrona (Lieutenaunt of Thracia) with a great power against Mamume. Who entamped hymselfe in a certayne place called Lalacxon, and settinge Stales and Ambushes on euery side to surprize and entrappe his foes when aduantage should be offered, prouoked Mamume to the encountrie and battayle. Mamume being thus beset, and on euery side circumvented by his Enemies, lyke vnto a Byrd in a Cage, oz a Deere in a Buckstall, was at his wittes ende, not knowyng how to escape oz shift hymselfe out of that imminent perill. And demaunding of one of the Romane captiues (whom he had taken Prisoner) the name of that Countrey and place wherein he had pight his Pavilions and Campe, and by what name the riuer there harde by, was called, answere was made by the Prisoner, that the Countrey was called Lalacxon, the place Proson, and the riuer Gyris.

Wherby he pzeaged and by the appellations of the same places (soz hee was a man well sene in the Greeke and Latyne Tongues, and earnestlye geuen to y study of Philosophy) immediatly conjectured y those names portended his confusion and some notable overthrowe of his people, and signified that hee and his retynew should be on euery side beset and caught lyke Fishes in a Net by the Romanes. Notwithstandinge, he encouraged his men not to quayle and despayre, but to stande lustelie to their tackelynge and to determyne with themselves to withstand their Enemies.

Wherfore the next morning, as soon as the day appeared, well perceiuing hymselfe to be hemmed in on euery side, he determined to seeke a way and egress by that part and place which Petrona guarded, and thereupon geuing vn-

The second Booke

A Saracen
Prince and
all his host
slayne.

to his men a watchword and token to geue aloude thout
all at once, there set vpon his enemies. But seeing his at-
tempt and purpose to be all in vayne, he a litle retyred, &
after a small bzeathing, gaue a sharpe and freshe onset a-
gayne, and vsing this order sundry tymes by startes ge-
uyng a blow and away agayne, at length desperatly with
a vehement violence and force rushed into the middes of
his enemyes, and was there slayne, both he and all his
Host vtterly.

An example
of great loue
and libera-
lty toward
learninge in
a saracene.

His Sonne whom he had sent on roving and spoyling
with parte of his Armye, hearinge of his Fathers death
and confusion, retyred in hast to Melitena. But he was
pursued and taken by y Capitaene of y Charsian streits,
and presented to Petrona. This Mamume was surerly
a man garnished and endued with many excelent quali-
ties and notable vertues. For beyng himselte singuler-
ly well learned, he cherished and entyerlye loued all them
that were learned, esteemyng and entertayning them be-
ry honozable, as by that example following shal appeare,
which for the worthynesse and commendacion thereof, I
haue thought good here to disciphere.

There was in Constantinople (somtime called By-
zance) a certayne Philosopher named Leo, somtime by-
shoppe of Thesalonica, and now depriued from the Bish-
opricke and Bysshopricke therof by reason of a deuision and
controuersie touching the hauyng and worshipping of I-
mages, which at that time merueilouslye troubled and dis-
turbed the Latine and the Greeke Church. Beinge for
this cause thence exiled, hee came to Constantinople,
where he byered a poore Cotage, and set vp a Schole, pro-
fessing to traine and instructe such Scholers as resorted
to him, in what Arte soeuer euery one was best disposed
to learne. Insomuch that out of his pryuate Schole ther
came many notable Clarkes, very skillfull in the studies
of Artes and Philosophy, and among the rest, it so chaun-
ced

Of the Saracen Historie. 73

red about this time that a certayne young man one of his
Scholers, hauinge by his Maisters industrious labour
and diligence attayned to an exact knowledge and skyll of
Geometrie, was taken Prisoner in the warres by the
Saracens, & chaunced into y seruice or rather seruitude of a
noble man of great estimation and name amonge them.
Whom Mamume by report and common bzuile hearing
to be well sene in the Mathematicall Disciplines com-
maunded to be brought befoze him. And causinge hym
in a disputation to be thoroughly apposed, found, that he so
farre passed & surmounted the Arabian Geometricians,
that of those thinges whereof they alone thought them-
selues to haue the vse and experience, he was well hable
to alledge and bzing the proper reasons and causes.
Mamume greatly wondring at his pryse and profound
knowledge (for he had thought that no nacion had had the
skill of that Arte but the Arabians onely) asked him of
whom he had learned his Arte, and whether his maister
were yet liuing. The younge man answered, that his
Maisters name was Leo, a poore man, and as yet vn-
luckie to the worldly goodes of Fortunes giftes and dis-
position, but genen altogether to his Booke and Studie.
Whereupon Mamume straightwaies addressed his Let-
ters to Leo in effect as foloweth.

¶ Cuen as the Tree is knowne by his fruit, so we by
the Scholer doe well knowe the excellencie of the Maister.
Those therefore shalbe to requeste thee, that (forasmuche
as God hath blessed thee with a gyft so incomperable, and
sithence thou lyuest there in poore estate, vnkowne
or at least vnraged of thy Citezens and Countrey
men, reappng no fruite of thy rare wisdom and super-
naturall speculation) thou wouldest daigne to come vnto
vs, and make vs partakers of thy admirable learninge.
This doing, make thy sure account, that all the Sara-
cenicall nacion shall submit themselves vnto thee and be
ready

The second Booke

readie at thy best and commaundement, and thou shalt
bee enryched with such rewarde, rycheesse and reue-
nues, as neuer yet any man hath bene. These letters
he deliuered vnto the young man to carie to Constan-
tinople, setting him free at libertie and rewarding hym
most honozably.

When Leo had receiued these letters, he opened and
folde the whole matter to certayne of the Emperours
familiers. And by this meanes hee became knowen to
the Emperour, who appointing vnto him a competent
stipend and pencion commaunded him to teache publikly.
Mamume despairing of Leo his comming, sent vnto him
certayne Geometrical and Astronomicall questions
and some of the other Sciences, desiring him therein to
haue his resolution. The which beyng cunningly by Leo
assoyled he sent backe againe to Mamume, whereunto
he had also annexed certayne tokens and Signes tou-
ching the pzediction of future thinges. Which Letters
when Mamume had read, it is sayde, that he was rai-
shed with suche an ardent desire and zeale toward Leo,
that he exclaymed in thys sort: O happie and thys hap-
pie are they I saye, (O Diuine Leo) which haue the
compaignie and fruition of thy pzelence. Then forth-
with he sent a solemne Ambassade with great rewarde
and ryche pzelentes vnto the Emperour, and wrote bys
Letters also vnto him as foloweth: I was fully deter-
mynd (as it becommeth an vnfeigned friende) to haue
come my selfe vnto thee: but sithens the waightie affai-
res of our Emprye and the gouernaunce of a most fierce
and wylde people, by God committed vnto my charge
(from whom all power and superiortie floweth) wil not
so permitte: I am faine in my stæde to sende vnto thee
my Ambassadors with request, that it may please thee
to sende vnto mee Leo, a man endued wth great sin-
gularitie in the knowledge of Philosophie and other
Sciences

Of the Saracen Historie. 74

Sciences, sojourning and makyng his abode wthyn
thy Citie of Constantinople. That he dwelling a while
wth mee, may geue mee instructions and make me par-
taker of his doctrine, whereunto I am seruently ena-
moured and as it were intreated. Doe not (I
pray thee) deferre the same, but graunt this my request
because of any diuersitie that may be betwixt vs, or
for any kinde dealings betwixt vs, that we may deale with me
herein like a friende. For which paine and curtesie wee
will giue vnto thee a .xx. M. in Gold, and wil enter into an
infringible league and perpetuall amitie with thee and al
thy Dominions.

Which request the Emperour woulde not graunt, least
the Sciences (for which the Romanes were renowned
and had in admiration among al Nations) should be com-
municated & discovered to the Barbarous people. Where-
in he being a Greeke and a Christian, might full well
haue learned at the hands of a barbarous person and Ido-
latrous Infidel to reuerence and condignely esteeme ver-
tue: which thing would God, Princes and noble men in
this age, admonished by this goodly example would doe.
For euer after ward, he had Leo in great honour, and pro-
moted him to great wealth and dignitie, and restored him
againe to his See and Byschopprike of Thessalonica,
where he was highly honoured and of al men reuerenced
for that thzough his forecastyng wyt & surpassing know-
ledge he conuerted and brought the land and ground of
Thessalonica from barainnesse & sterilitie, to fruitfulness
and fertilitie. But nowe it is time for vs to retourne to
discourse of Occidentall matters.

The Saracenes of Mauritania, transfretting out of
Sicile (wherein they had taken and of longe tyme
vsurped manye Colonies) into Italic, vnder the guy-
ding and conduite of Saba, besieged Tarento.
The Greeke and Venetian Panies loyning in one, arriv-
ed

The second Booke

Victory of
Saracens, or
uer the
Greekes and
Venetians.

ued in Calabria, to reise the Siege and to rescue the Citie. Wherefoze hearing Saba, feynning as though he had bene afraide, to th' intent he might the rather allure and prouoke the enemye to coape with him, reysed his Siege and discaimpe, and like as though he had bene loath to meddle, retyzed into the region of Crotona: where being after ward assailed and set vpon, at the first bzunt he discomfited and put to flight the Greekes, and the whole puyssaunce of the Saracens was all bent & turned against the Venetians fighting and defending themselves manfully: and a few of them in number being by a pause so strong and mightie circumueted, were partly slain, partly drowned, but the Venetians in that conflict perished and were brought to confusion euerichone, which victory set Saba so a flote & ingenerated in him such haughtinesse and pride, that speedely coasting ouer the Ionian Sea, he arrived in the coast of Illyria, practising therein along the prouinciall borders great pillage and roberie, and hearing that the Venetian flete was retourning homeward, laden with Wares out of Syria, he brought about his pause with all expedition into the Bay of Trieste, and from thence insidiously and sodainly setting vpon them, spoyled and killed the Marchauntes and Mariners, and all the Rowers, their rooted hatred and spightfull rancour toward y Venetia name was so vnappeaseable. Letting thence, he cut his course toward Aucon a noble Citie of Picene, where there is a goodly hauen, and it forcibly toke and being taken, sacked and last of all consumed it wyth fire, and a few of the Oppidanen or Townesmen which taried still, were taken. For the rest being brought into sodaine feare and amazednes through this violent irruption were fledde almost all into the mayne land and mediterranean region.

Within a litle while after, an other pause of Saracens landed in the coast of Hecuria, with purpose and full intent

Of the Saracen Historie. 75

tent to besiege and take the Citie of Rome. Whose sodayne arrivall and terrible appoche filled all the Citie with terrour and dread. Wherefoze Pope Leo the fourth of that name assembled the people together, and vnto the made this Oracion following.

What is the matter my Childzen whereof you are somuch affraide? or why are your mindes thus troubled and appailled? Certes there happeneth nothing vnto vs without the prouidence and wyll of the almighty God, neither is it sent vnto vs undeserueblye on our partes. When ought we to feare & dread their tyrannie, whē we fall at ciuill strife and goe together by the eares amonge our selues, when one Brother conspireth his Brothers death and destruction. For all they whiche do beleue and confesse Chyriste to be their Sauour and Redemer, are Brothers. When I say when the Brands of these mischiefes are kindled amonge vs, we ought to feare, leasse God being highly displeased with vs therfoze, should send these or rather worse plagues vpon vs. For if you think that these impious and barbarous people are sent vnto vs without the will and pleasure of almighty God, you are far deceiued. For holy Scriptures do in many places testifie & dayly examples euery where teache & confirme the same. God saying by his owne mouth, that he wyll vse the wicked blasphemers and the enemies of his sacred name as whippes to scourge, and meanes to pursue by vnfaithfull, wyllfull and disobedient Childzen. And we do know, that the ciuile discord and flagitious dissolutenes of the Greekes gaue first occasion to this pestiferous and diabollicall nation, to extend their rage and practise their first cruell inuasion vpon the Christians. Did not the lewde lving of the Gothes and Kinge Rodirick, allure them to set foote into Hispaine. Whome although these bellish Impes discomfited and condinglye punished, yet when they once conuerted their force and moued warre

Oracion of
Pope Leo
the fourth,
to encourage
his Romans
against the
saracens.

against

The second Booke

againste god and godlye men, they were repulſed, put to
 flight and ſlaigne euen of a few. What do we feare this
 moſt daſtardly rable and loſſie nacion moze then we do
 Almighty God: for we doubt not awhit, euery holwe
 and euerye mynute of an holwe to offend his Di-
 uine Maieſtie, to prouoke his wraſh and anger againſte
 vs, to reuile and blaſpheme his holy name: to ſetwe our
 ſelues wilfull, diſobedient and ſtubboorne to the loze of
 his ſweet word and commaundment and by our owne
 phantaſticall deuices to heape vnto ouer ſelues the grie-
 uous ſentence of his heauy diſpleaſure: but at the onely
 hearinge of this reprobate generation, wee tremble and
 quake for feare, as though humane force and moztall
 Armes were moze to be feared, then euerlaſting paynes
 and eternal damnation. What is the auncient pyſſance
 and knightly prowes that was wont to be in the vndaun-
 ted Romanes? What is become of their valiauntnes,
 paynfulneſſe, trauaile and courage that in all extremitye
 and aduerſitie was euer inuincible? Our Anceſſors
 and forefathers, beſore Chriſtianitie was embraced, oz
 Chriſt to the world notyſſed and beleued on, beyng yet
 blinded and noſeled in Idolatrye and ſuperſtitious Reli-
 gion, feared no force, no violence, no multitude of ene-
 mies, but oftentimes with a ſmall handfull and power,
 banquiſhed the mightie & populous armies of their ene-
 mies: The Gaules & French, being a people and nacion
 moſt fierce and at that time by reaſon of the buygenes of
 their bodies ſozmidable and dreadfull (the limytes of the
 Romane Empire being yet but ſtreit and narrow, & the
 Citie nothing ſo great as now it is, mens courages alſo
 though the ſodayne irruption and coming of ſucha ſirce
 and big nation maruellouſſie abbaſhed) toke in daede (I
 cannot deny) this Citie, hauing in it at that time no force
 of defence noz comodius place made by art ſoz reſiſtance:
 but yet the Capitoll, they were neuer hable to take. And
 not

Of the Saracen Historie. 76

not ſuffered long there to rouſſe, were by the valiauntce of
 one baniſhed Romane thence repulſed and oziuen alway
 with notable ſlaughter of a great maigny of their people.
 And beholde, the Romane empire was not of ſuch power
 and ſtrength at that time as it is now. For the limytes
 of yempyre extended no further but to the Romane Ter-
 rytozy. Now whereas the greateſt part of Italy is ſub-
 iect to the Romane State, and the Citie with people well
 replenished, hauing now not the Capitoll onely ſoz your
 ſoztreſſe, but a whole Towne alſo by our induſtrie and
 procurement annexed and vnited to your Citie, ſoztyfied
 and ſtrengthened with all maner of Artiſticall deuice and
 pollicie, hauyng (I ſay) ſo many noble Perſonages and
 approued Capitaines both ſoz ſkill & courage renowmed,
 and the Sea of the moſt Catholique Relygion here reſi-
 aunt, you now ſtand in dread and feare not of the Gaules,
 which be a woorthy and noble nacion not of the buyge and
 populous armies of the Gothes, noz yet of the Hunnes,
 the Subuerter and deſtroyers of many moſte flouriſh-
 yng and noble cities: but of the moſt cowardly and rogiſh
 nation of all Asia, a piſſing rable of Mauritanian, thieues
 and Wagarantes. The Hannes head that was ſounde
 in the ground where the Capitoll ſtandeth, gaue ſuch a
 deſtinie and fate therunto, that no nacion ſhoulde be hable
 by conqueſt and force to take it. Do you think that y Ca-
 pitoll was earſt moze ſafe and holie, beinge the Seate of
 Saturn, then it is now, being employed to a Caſtle of ſin-
 cere and true religion? Belæue me, belæue mee, nexther
 the Saracenes noz anye other wicked Nation whiche are
 the proſeſſed Enemies of Chriſtes name and Relygion
 ſhall euer buylde their Bowze & plant themſelues in this
 Citie. Rome was buylde vnder ſuch a lucky Conſtel-
 lation, that the Empyre thereof ſhall neuer quayle but
 continue perpetuallye: and vnder this ſame deſtenie is
 this Towne therunto annexed and adioyned that it
 ſhoulde

The second Booke

should be the See of Religion, which thing the most em-
 periall and Cathedrall Church of him that is chiefe of the
 Apostles assuredly promise. But peradventure you
 thinke, that God being prouoked and moued to wrathe
 by reason of our manyfold sinnes & offences, hath giuen
 them leaue thus to extend and shew their villanous rage
 against vs. I graunt, we haue demerited these and farre
 greater Plagues, and that this rustling Airre is sent vp-
 on vs not without the speciall foresight and prouidence of
 God, that taking warning and occasion by these aduersi-
 ties and oppressions, to amende our naughtie liues, wee
 may the better renounce our former haunt of licentious
 lustes, and with penitent hearts turne vnto him. And so
 long shall they haue power ouer vs, as we persist & wil-
 fully wallow in the stinking puddle of our vngodly
 wayes. But if we truly repent and imploze his mercy,
 this wicked Nation shall straightwayes geue place and
 flee before vs lyke sheepe, whom wee shall kill and slea
 down right before vs, and reuenge the iniuries that they
 the yeres passed haue done vnto vs and vnto the Maiesty
 of Almighty God, whose Temples and consecrated houses,
 they haue wickedly polluted and most horriblely prophane-
 ned. Hereof may you make your full account, vnlesse
 peradventure you thinke that the Asturians, the Canta-
 brians and French (who haue oftentimes vanquished and
 with notorious calamities discomfited them) to haue been
 better and more valiaunter men then you your selues be.
 But they were not (believe me) and God is no lesse mer-
 ciful to the present state and inward mindes of me now
 aduanced, then he was in the age and life passed. For at the
 godly Sermons and zealous admonitions of Pelagius
 and other holy men, they renounced their vicious wayes
 and turning vnto God besought his helpe to assist and de-
 liuer them out of thraldome. He is so mercifull, and so
 readie to heare the petitions of the faithfull that he neuer
 forsaketh

Of the Saracen Historie. 77

forsaketh nor leaueth destitute and comfortlesse them,
 that vnseignedly and hartely craue ayde at his handes.
 Amende your lyues therefore, and well thinke with
 your selues that you must wyth tooth and nayle, so ende-
 uour your selues, that you may not in any wise for god-
 lynes and faith geue place to any passion in the worlde.
 Call to memozy the pristinuate valiaunce, of the Romane
 name, couragiously aduance forward, handle your wea-
 pons manfully and deale your purysaunt blowes doughti-
 tily among yonder miscreant people, I my selfe will be
 your Capitaine and goe before you, and participate wyth
 you what euent soeuer Fortune sendeth. I doe assure
 you, the victorie is most certainly in your handes, if
 you will doe as before I haue directed you. They whose
 chaunce shall be to dye in this most godly quarrell and
 Battayle, shall not onely wyne in this worlde, a glori-
 ous fame & renowned praise, but shalbe after ward trans-
 ported into the Kingdome of euerlasting lyfe and haue
 theyr names registred in the Booke, of lyfe among the
 electe of God for euer.

After he had made an ende, as many as were habile
 and fitte for warfare, tooke weapon in hande, and fol-
 lowed hym to Ostia. There meanyng to receyue at
 pushe of the Wyke, the enemye, so soone as he shoulde set
 any fote on lande. When they evidently descryed the
 enemyes appoche, and in sight perused their order, the
 Bysshoppe estones commaunding his Souldiours to
 bowe the knees of their heartes and earnestly to pray
 vnto God, implozed the diuine assistance and mercy,
 full ayde of hym that is the geuer of all victorie,
 whose wordes and Prayer were in effecte as fo-
 loweth.

O almightie and most mercifull father which against
 the victorie vnto Gedeon wyth a small number ouer-
 the hygge multitude of his enemyes, then which neuer
 yet,

The second Booke

But perceuing that the same was not possible to be taken but by long Siege, he thence discamped and passed the ryuer Euphrates by a brydge of Shippes. And spoyleing the the Countrey and places there aboutes, assaultynge and battering many strong holdes, whereof some he tooke by surrender, he retourned againe to y^e citie. Where he rested not long, but agayne making a warlike voyage & expedition into Siria agaynst the Saracens, bent his whole force to winne Germanicia and wanne it. From thence he remoued to the Citie Adata, which he fiercely besieged and burnt the Suburbes. Whiche Citie albeit the Cittizenes and Inhabitantes defended very slackly and negligently, yet could not be wyne and take it. Basilus wondring to see them so secure and negligent in such imminent danger, demaunded of them the cause thereof, vnto whom an ancient man of the Citie aunswered: that it was decreed by destinye that he should neuer winne their Citie maugre all his force and battary, notwithstandinge there shoulde come one of his lygne and race called Constantine which should obtayne the same by conquest, but it should not be his Sonne Constantine, who was with him in his camp at that present.

At whiche aunswere Basilus so fozmed and fumed that he gaue the assault farre moze fiercely, and violently then at any time befoze he had done. But when he saw he could nothing preuaile, he raysed his Siege and went his way, but befoze his departure, he commaunded all his prisoners to be slayne, least they should stir vp some disturbance and commotion & also because he would be out of feare and not neede to appoynte keepers vnto them. Shortly after, the Saracens of Tharsus infesting the Roman Provinces, he sent one Andrew surnamed Scythia agaynst them, who acquitting & behauing himselfe agaynst them very honozably & knightly, their courage was alaid and their malicious attempts well brydled. Whereat the

kinge

Of the Saracen Historie. 79

king of Tharsus so stamped and stared, that in most horrible and blasphemous tearmes he belched out words full of threates and spightfull contumelies agaynst God, in his Letters addrested and sent vnto Andrew: Wherein he wrote, y^e if he had inuaded and come in person agaynst hym, it was not the Sonne of Mary that should haue holpen or deliuered him.

A reuilinge
Blasphemer.

But it was not long befoze he felt the deserued smarte and due guerdon of his odible myscreauncye. For coming himselfe with moze ayde to his Host, Andrew on the other side in good order marshalled his Campe and gaue vnto him battayle: Where betwene them was fought a cruell conflict, but in the end the Saracenes turned theis backs and fled, in which Chase, most of them were slayne, and among the rest the Kinge himselfe, was there bereft of lyfe and limme.

It chaunced within a while after, that by the sinister meanes and enuious rancour of some backrindes which spighted at his good successe and valyaunt prowesse, this Andrew was accused to the Emperour his maister, that when he well might, he would not take and wyne the Citie of Tharsus: vnto whiche surmised accusation, such credit was geuen, that Andrew was discharged of his generalshippe, and one Stypiota placed in his ROME. The Saracens which followed no time nor occasion that might further their Affayres and proceedings, perceiuing & vnderstanding y^e through this priuie gruge & new change, the watch was nothing at al looked vnto, in the night time set vpon them and slew of them very many, and the rest put to flight. On the other side, the Affricane Saracens besieging Ragusium (whiche is a Citie standinge in the borders and coastes of Illyria) and the Ragusines sending to the Emperour for ayde and rescue, Basilus furnished out a hundred tall Shippes of Warre for their reliefe and sauetie. Whereof the Saracenes hauing intelligence,

Z

ret sed

The second Booke

Italians dis-
comfited the
Saracenes.

reysed their Siege and toke their iourney into Italy, and taking the Citie of Barry, most lamentably afflicted and in a maner vniuersallie destroyed with fier murther and rapine the Calabrians, Apuliana Lucanes and Salentines. And being now in minde to deuide Rome and the Empire of all Italy, share and share lyke among themselves, beholde Pope Iohn, greatly moued with pitie and compassion to see his Countrey in such extreme perill, imployed ayde and besought Alberick (whose power was greate in all Hetruria) to assist and ioyne side with hym, for the repulse of this dangerous inuasion. Whiche Alberick with a mighty armie that he had leued in his owne Countrey and partly also mustered and taken vp in and about Rome, encountred them, after they had set foote within the Romane Terytoze: and at the firste not far from the Citie, in Battaille them vanquished: but afterwards at the riuer of Leyre about the Citie Minturne he so notably discomfited them, that they were now reholued, and fully purposed altogether to depart quight out of Italy. Wherfoze burning all alonge the Sea coaste as they went, they departed into Apulia, and buyldinge a Castle vpon Mount Gargan. and vnder the rydge of the same Mount a Towne strongly fenced and fortiffied for the warres, they continued there for many yeres, soze infesting and spoyling Italye. Then they toke Beneuent and it ransacked and after fiered. Whiche terrible example so amazed and astounded the other cities adioining, that without resistaunce, they receined the Garrisons of that nation within their walles. But ayde beinge sent by the Pope, the barbarous Patumettes doyng all rather with pyllage and robberie, then with any iust war, departed without any battaille out of the Romane limits and dominions. And an other flete of the same nation comminge out of Affrica, after long and cruell Siege toke the citie of Geane, and at their first entree slue all the defendants,

Of the Saracen Historie. 80

but the Maydenes, Damoselles, Matrones and younge boyes they shipped and caried away with them into Affrica. But Dandulus Venetus writeth, y al of the Male sexe retourned afterwarde home againe into their Countrey, but how and by what meanes that came to passe, is by none declared nor written. Geane was wonne and taken in the yere after the incarnation 935. And the Saracenes being first dispossessed of the Castle of Mount Gargan by the Dalmatians, and afterwards in many ouerthowes weakened and vanquished by the Pannonians, were lastlye by Ocho Emperour of Germanes in the yere of our Lozde 969. quight expulsed and diuen out of Italy. The Greekes, do here make their auant, that Italy was deliuered and rid out of the seruitude and dreadfull oppression of y Saracens thzough the aide and helpe of their Constantinopolitane Emperoure, in that the French succoured and relieved them, for the good wyl and friendshippe that they bare to their Emperoure. For they say, that the Italyans bearinge Rhagusium to bee rescued and deliuered from the Siege by the Greekish Paup, submitted themselves vnder the obesaunce of the Emperre, and requested ayd also for themselves. Wher vpon, Basilius by his Letters directed & addressed vnto y French King, treated with him to aide them, and by him was the Sultane taken and bzought to Capua: who afterwarde by the fauorable meanes of the Commons of Capua (with whom he had conspired against the) King was set at liberty, and the King being thence expulsed, he inferred warre vpon the Capuans, but by the ayde of the Greekes which came against him, he packed and went away. This French King of whom they surmise this talke and Hystoize, I thinke should be Carolus Crassus the fift Emperoure of Germanes, but for the trueth thereof, I referre you to my Authours the Greekes, whom I wyl, shall shifte for themselves touching the credit of the pzemisses.

Geane taken

a most noble victorie. He wasted and subuerted Berrra al sauing the Castle, where he found great store of riches and treasure, and taking innumerable of them prisoners deliuered many Christians out of thraldome. Afterward this Nicephorus Phocas being aduanced to the Empire, Duke Manuel, the Bastard sonne of Leo, was sent with a mighty power against the Saracens into Sicile, where through negligence & want of skill he with all his host was slaine. And at the very same time, Iohn Zimisca (afterward Emperour) being sent into Cilicia, had the vpperhand of the Saracens at y^e Citie of Adana. The Nicephorus himself in pers^{on}, with a great power entred into Cilicia and toke Anabarza, Rosa and Adana three proper Cities of that Province, with many other strong holdes and Castles: which done, he returned into Cappadocia and there wintered. In the beginning of the next Spring he went thither againe, and sent his brother Leo with a part of his army to Tharsus, & himselfe laid siege to Mopsihestia, though the middle wherof, there ranne a riuer named Sarus. While the Emperour layde harde siege and soze distressed the one side thereof, the Saracens seeing no remedie set fire in that part, and departed vnto the other part, which being also conquered and wonne he slew of them euery man. When the Tharsians hearde thereof, they submitted themselves to the Emperours grace. And within three daies after, a power was sent out of Egypt to ayde the Tharsians, which could not attaine to land, and in their returne homeward, what with force of weather and blustering windes, and what with incursions of the Romane Gallies, they were for the most parte all lost and cast away. When the Emperour was returned home to Constantinople, he caused the brasen gates which he had brought fro the winning of Tharsus & Mopsihestia, of excellent workmanship & curious art, to be set on the East & West side of the Castle wth other new

new ornaments & garnishments of his owne cost added thereto. When he invaded Syria and hauing partly beaten downe and partly wasted the Cities about Libanus & the Sea coast, he came before Antioch, which Citie standeth vpon the riuer Orontes. But the Antiochians standing at resistance, and also victual in his Camp waxing very scant beside such continuall raine, that the ground was all overflowen & couered with water, he was faine to bulde a Bastyle on the Mount Taurus, which is at this day is called Maurus, leauing there behind him to infect & skirmish with y^e Antiochians, Michael Burze whom he had aduanced to be one of his chief Nobilitie, & inuested with the tytle of the Capitaine of Mount Taurus. And appointed one of his Eunuches named Peter, a valiant, constant & skillful warriour, master of his Tentcs and Pavillions to see order taken & provided for the wintering of his host in Cilicia, after which order so take, he returned to Constantinople. Burzes with many venturous Raades & excursions laid soze to the charge of the Antiochian Saracens, and them greatly molested, studying by all meanes to wyne honour and glorie by deedes of Armes and to take the Citie. Vppon a time he prauily measured out the altitude and height of the Tower of the same, and preparing scaling Ladders equall in height therewith, in a very darke and snowe Winter nyght, he came secretly and without making any noyse vnder the walles of the Citie: where setting vp his Ladders, with CCC. men that he had brought thither with him for the same purpose, he mounted vp, and kyled the watchmen and keepers of the Tower and as many as hee could meete withall: and straightwayes dispatched a Currouer to the Maister of the Tentcs and Pavillions to aduertise him, how the case stood and what he purposed to do, willing him speedily to come with more power to ayde him and be partaker of that glorious & noble enterprize.

Antiocheta-
ben.

The

The second Booke

The Antiochians knowing their chiefe Tower to be taken, ranne couragiously to repell and dispossesse the Romanes out of the same.

Now the Maister of the Tentres had in charge from the Emperour, that he should not in any wise invade Antioch, because the common bzute went, that the captiuitie of that Citie did portende within a while after, the Emperours confusion, whiche bzed in him such doubtfull cares, that he knew not what to do in that case, nor which way to take. Neuerthelesse loath, that so manye valiaunt men should through his default perishe, & thinking it no poynt of humanytie to see them thus fall into the lapse for want of a small ayde, marched with all his power and invaded Antioche: at whose comming the Saracenes were so dismayde that their hartes fainted and their stomackes immediatly quayled. Burzes & his company which before dispayred of any help or remedye, looking for nothing but present death, toke new hart agrace and were reuiued, and bursting open the Gates with his battayle Are, made free passage and ingresse for the Maister of the Tentres and his traine to enter.

Thus was Antioche one of the noblest Cities in the world, brought into the power of the Romanes, whiche shortly after, in the time of the Emperoure Iohn Zimisca, the Saracenes with all their ioynt powers and forces both of the Orient and occident attempted to recouer. And so vnder the conduct of the Caliph of Cairoan in Affrica, (because the power of the Caliph of Syria was now soe weakened and brought to a lowe ebbe) they planted their Siege about it. Whose inuasions and malice the Citizens and Inhabitauntes manfullye and constantlye withstoode, tyll the Emperour might hereof be certyfyed. Who hauing intelligence of this generall conspiracie of the Gentiles, commaunded his Princes of Mesopotamia to ayde his besieged Frendes and Subiectes. Who

according

Of the Saracen Historie. 83

according to his charge and commission in a pitched battaille (wherein the Saracenes were in number farre more then the Romanes) them disparcled, chased and discomfited.

Now because I see the empire of the Saracens to decaye apace towarde an ende and small ruine, we must before we procede any further, briefelye and compendiouslye wyte of the remnauntes and reliques of them that yet lurked in Affrica and Spayne: and firste wee wyll speak of Spayne, then afterwarde of Affrica.

In Spayne therfore Ramire Kinge of Lyon in the yere of our Saviour Christ 901. making war vpon the Saracenes, destroyed a Towne of theirs named Madrice and put them to flight nere vnto Osina and made Benaiam King of Saragoza Tributary vnto hym. Whom (afterward rebellious) he ioyninge in league with Abduramen King of Corduba and turning to his olde bomyt agayne) Ramire with his forces vanquished and toke Prisoner in battayle nere to a Towne called Symancas, wherein there were slayne of the Saracenes thre thousande, and many other annoyances and harines did hee vnto them. Afterwarde lying at the Siege of Talauera, he ouersame the Toletane Saracenes whiche came to reple the Siege and to rescue the Citie, of whom vii. M. were taken and xii. M. slayne. After this Sancius Kinge of Lyon beinge depriued and dzyuen out of his kingdome by his owne people came to Abduramen King of Corduba to be cured of a certayne disease by the help of his Physicians, whom for conning and knowledge he had heard to be the expertest and skilfullest that were then in all the world. Whom the King of Corduba did not onely cause to be healed, but also with his power and help (maugre all his foes) restored him to his home and dignitie. But after that hee was dead, the Saracenes wanne Symancas, Duengas Sepulueda and Gormas, Townes belonging to the kingdome of Lyon and rased Zamorra. And within a while after

As

after

The second Booke

after, destroyed and everted Portugall the head of all Lusitanie and Compostella. After the death of Abduramen, Alliagib his Successour in that kingdome, naming himself Almanfor (which is as much to say) as the Protector of king Mansor his Lozde and maister, because he hoped thereby y rather to allure the peoples goodwills, and under that coloure to insinuate himselfe into their fauoures (for at that time Mansor raigned at Marrocco. Which Citie (as we haue afoze shewed) was the Seate royall of all the Saracenes Empire Occidentall, vnder whose iurisdiction and rule all the inferiour kinges of the Saracenicall nation in Spayne lyued) gathered a mighty power and inuaded the Territozies of the Castulonians, Lyon and Biskaye.

The Citie of Lyon he almost utterly defaced, the Towers and Bulwarkes thereof, which were all of Marble, he rased and beat downe to the grounde, leauinge onely one, vntouched and vblemished, to the intent that the memozye of the beautye and gorgeousnes of that Citie might appeare and remayne to posteritie. He toke Asturia and Coiaca which is now called Valenceja (not that Valentia which standeth vpon the midland Sea, but another in the kingdome of Leon by the Pyrenes) and Sanguin with many other Townes. And in the Presinct of the Castulonians, he destroyed Osma, Alcobetla, Berlanga and Atienza; and of the Gallician Townes, he toke S. James, and commaunded the Belles to be carryed away thence to Corduba, where he vsed them in Steede of Lampes in his prophane Temples, & in this sorte he continued outraging and keeping sharpe warres for the space of twelue yeares. Till at length Bermudes King of Lyon with the powers of the Castulonians, the Byskayes and his olone bad vnto hym battayle in a place called Calataicor. This battayle was fierrely foughten on both sides for the space of a whole daye, where were

slaine

Of the Saracen Historie. 84

slayne of the Saracenes many thousandes, and in the end Almanfor with all his retinew and Adherents fled and shortly after died for sorrow of his ouerthrow. The Spaniards ruffling and spoiling their camp, found therein great booties & prayes which they at their flight had left behind them. Abdimelick greatly moued w his fathers misfortune, and purposing to recouer and haue amendes for the same, was also vanquished. But afterward in the reigne of Alphonsus the Son of Bermudes, y Saracenes agayne inuading y borders & frontiers of y Castulonians, destroyed Auila & toke Ormetum with any other townes. And Alphonsus reedified the citie of Lyon. After al this, there sprang vp ciuile warres among the Spanish Saracenicall Kinges and Princes, whereby the power of the Christians in that prouince dayly increased, insomuch that Mahomet Enasir Bishop of Marrocco being vanquished in Gotalonia nere to Valentia and ix. y. Saracenes slaine with him in the yere of our redemption 1150. the Christians within xxx. yeeres folowing, recovered Valentia, Deuia, Alicante, Muria, new Carthage, Corduba, Syuille, Iacn and Vbeda, and y Saracenes had no more in their possession but onely the kingdome of Granada, from whence at length they were utterly expelled and driven out by Ferdinando the last king of the Tarraconians, (or Aragon) Grandfather by the Mothers side to Charles the first late Emperour.

In Africa a newe Prophet vaunting himself to be one of y right ligne & race of Mahomet whose name was Elmahelis, a man both bozne & brought vp in y Mountains, about the yere of our Lord 1000 bzued a new bzoyl and set abroch certayne quaynte fashions about Religion. He expelled out of their kingdomes, the high Bishop of Cairoan (which Citie before we shewed was not farre of from Carthage, & was y head Citie in the mayne land of Africa) & also Abraem y king of Marocco: which done, he

As ij

subdued

Granada
wonne from
the Saracenes
& Infidels
by King Fer-
dinando
Grandfather
to Charles
the first Anno
D. 1492.

The second Booke

A miserable
king depos-
sed frō his
kingdome,
by despera-
tion brake
his owne
necke and
his wordes.

subdued both the Mauritanies, all Africa, all Numidia, and Lybia vnto the borders of the Negroes and Ægypt, constituting his royall and Pontificall Seate at Marocco. The King of Marocco, fleeing from Habbulmumen who pursued after him with part of Elmahelis Army, arrived and came to Oranum, a Citie situate vpon the inland Sea in Mauritania Cæsariensis. But the Citizens not receiuing him, the poore wretched King being comfortlesse and without all hope of better fortune, with his wife, who for want of better stoe roade behind him (both on one horse) went vp into the toppe of a very high mountaine lying into the Sea and there dashing the spurs into the horse sides, cast himself, his wife and horse down headlong from a Craggie rocke, and so all thre dyed together at one instant, and were found in the Shore all bruised and dismembred. And Habbulmumen, returning back to Marocco, found Elmahelis dead, and was created King and Bysshop in his place. Whose posteritie and Successours, that is to wit Iosippus his Sonne, Mansor his Nephieu and Machomet Enasir, of whom we made mention before, his Nephieus sonne, enjoyed & possessed that Kingdome. But when the tenne Sonnes after the death of Mahomet their father, contended and bickered among themselves for the Garlande, the house of the Marines popped into the Kingdome of Fess, and the Habbuludean familie invaded the Kingdome of Telenfine, and displacing there the Tunctane Magistrate, created and made there a King. And all the other Kings & Princes of Africa renounced their homage and revolted from the Kings of Marocco: wherby the power of the Saracens decreased in Africa aswell as in other places and the name of their Emppze vtterly extinct.

The

The Thirde Booke. 85

Wherein is expressed and plainly de-

clared the euersion of the Saracenicall Empire and the originall beginning, continuance & increase of the Turkishe domination, till the first yeere of the raigne of Ottomanne, from whom, Iouius and diuerse others both Greeke and Latine Turcographers begin their Histories: also the first originall of the Tartarians, Mamalukes, Assassines, and Sophians: Containing a true and perfect discourse of Turkishe Affaires for three hundredth yeeres space before Ottomanne, for pleasure and varietie very delectable.



At now must I procede in a newe kind of order, and discourse vpo matters most worthy to be remembred: for we haue already so orderly & successiue treated of Saracenicall affaires, that now we be come by order of Historie, to speake of those times, wherin (the auncient and true Saracene Empire decaying and as it were the lawfull stocke and offspring of Mahomet excluded and dispossessed) Bastards and bystartes of an other ligne stepped in and vsurped the principallitie, a people (I say) shuffling in for the best game, and bearing themselves, not (as the other) vnder a painted shewe and coulozable glose of gate Religion and holines, but planted themselves in a moze firme and harde Emppze, mainteining and amplifying the same by force of Armes and violence. Whose State differeth as much from the former Empire, as the hardnesse of Iron from the softnesse of Leade. For albeit the hyrgenes of the Saracenicall

Saracenes were as the right child of Mahomet and Turkes in comparison but Bastards.

Aa. iij.

The thirde Booke

racenicall dominion were great and mighty, (inſomuch that vnder the patched cloake and pretence of falſe doctrine and diabolicall Religion, it ouerflowed and almoſt drownded the whole world) yet the violent rage therof was by the valiaunt encountrie of couragious Souldiours and Martiall knightes from time to time either brybled and reſſed, or at leaſt, brought vnder ſuch awe, that many times they were faine to keepe bill vnder wing, and to be pent within narrower rōme then they were beſore. Pea many times, ſuch flames of ciuil diſcord among theſelues burſt out, that y ſame being diſperſed into ſundry partes, & farre diſſeuered from the fire where it was firſt ſozged about Babilon and Arabic, waxed in proceſſe of time ſo keyecold & froſtbittē, y they were not able to wagge & beſtirre themſelues as they did beſore.

And ſo beeyng diſtract and pulled from the whole Maſſe, and conſequently made weaker, were either cleane vaniſhed and buried in the pit of Obliuion, or elſe wyth another Fire in ſome other place newly kindled, were conſumed and quite burnt euen with their owne flame: which thing hapned vnto this aforenamed Forge, till ſuch time that new and ſtronger Smithes tooke y office in hand, & ſozged a harder mettall vpon the Anuill, ſo harden and ſtrengthē y ſoftneſſe of this Leade, & thzoughly to beare out y dignitie of y Shop. For although (as it euidently appeareth by y which hath bene already declared in the two firſt Bookes) our Anceſſors & Predeceſſors haue continually warred w the Saracens welnigh 400 yeres ſpace, with diuers ſortune and doubtfull victorie, in ſo much that although their power euen from their firſte beginning were very mightie and great, and Chriſtendome all that tyme neuer quiet, but continually ſtoted in ciuil diſcorde, beſide the often incuſſions of Barbarous Nations, the Emperours of Conſtantinople ſhewing themſelues (that while) no better then Pexcocks & effeminate per-
that

Of the Saracen Historie. 86

ſons: yet byd they oftentymes plague them with manye great ouerthrowes, and recouered out of theyr poſſeſſions ſometyme Syria, ſometyme Armenia, nowe a part of Perſia and nowe ſome other prouinces: but yet alwayes and ſtyll they kept in their poſſeſſion all Europa, ſauyng a peece of Spayne onely, Asia the leſſe, Media, and the Kingdomes of Parthia Bithynia and Cappadocia with many other Realmes and Kingdomes. But the power of the Turkes encroching and wynting vpon vs now almoſt ſor the ſpace of 600. yeres, they neuer could reſſe, neyther hinder the courſe and proceeding of their Emppye, neither yet expel and dzyue them out of ſuch places as they had once gotten. Of ſuch ſorce is warlike diſcipline and ſo much differeth the fierceneſſe of the Moztthē people from the tenderneſſe and effeminacie of the Southren. Now, wherof and by what occaſiō, they bzake out, we ſhall now declare.

Baſilius Porphyrogenitus being Emperour of Conſtantinople about the yere of our Lord 1000. many Tyrantes were ſetled ſor y Carlad and diuided among them, the Empire of Saracens, as beſore in the laſt Booke was ſheued, wherof ſoure alwayes contending ſor y Supremacie, & keeping deadly warres one w another ſor y tryal of their titles, there began great diuiſion & hartburning betwene Mahomet Prince of Perſians, Coraſmiorians & of diuerſe other people on the one part, and the Caliph of Syria whoſe royall ſeate & Metropolitane ſea was at Bagadet. In which wars, Mahomet being put to y woꝝ and by y Babilonian (thzough helpe and ayde of Sclerus and y Roman captiues) vanquiſhed, ſent to y Turks ſor aide, whoſe helpe and furtheraunce at a pinche (as afore ſaid) hath bene ſpecified, the Saracens ſor certayne yeres paſſed were accuſtomed in theyr warres too ble and ioygne vnto them, and the rather becauſe they profeſſed and embraced euen at the firſte eruptions,
and

Antioche
ten.

The thirde Booke

finided that they were begotten and dyd come of the wylybe Faunes.

But the Turkes and Tulsagetes descendynge of their race and inhabityng the Northside of Mount Caucasus as befoze wee haue shewed, differed muche from them as well in lyfe, as manners and Lawes: beinge (notwithstandynge) so lyke amonge themselves and so lynked together in League one with another, that they were taken and accompted for one People, and peradventure they were all one, and were so called and named (as prophane Persones) by the Armenians their Neighbours, from whome they receiued their Rites, and whiche were called Sagæ (as muche to saye) as holie. For this worde Teutazites (as in the Seconde Booke was shewed) signifyeth in their language Gentiles or a prophane People. For these names are of many Writers so mingled and taken together, that the one seemeth to be theyr name, the other their Surname.

Procopius saith, these People were nothinge nere to the other Hunnes, neyther had any thinge to doo with them: but that they bordered vpon the North partes of Persia, that is to witte Armenia. For Armenia was euer lyghtlye subiect to the Crowne of Persia. Neyther were they Wanderers from place to place, (as hauynge no habitation saynge there, where their Cattayle stayed and grazed, as the other Hunnes or Scythians were): but had in their Possession and inhabyted the beste Plottes and mooste fertile Regyon that was amonge the Donnes and Mountaynes rounde aboute, and amonge the Hunnes, they onely were white of complexion and coloure, and not so ouglye nor so sterne visaged, neyther luyng so sauagelye and beastlye as the others dyd: but lyke true Subiectes lued orderly in due obedience and humble subiection vnder

der

Of the Saracen Historie. 88

der one Prince, whome they accepted as their head and King: hauing also a well ordered Common wealth, with due execution and imbracyng of Justice and other politicall Lawes, both at home amonge themselves, and abroade with other foraine Nations borderynge vpon them, as the Greeques, Romanes and dyuers other ciuile and well gouerned Nations dyd also.

The chiefe Citie of all their Kingdome was called Gorga. The noblest sorte and wealthiest persones amonge them, had continuallye seiourninge at their Houses as Gastes, twenty or moe of their famplier Fréendes, accordynglye as their Substance and Rycheesse extended, with whom, both wealth, authoritie and power was in common: as the same Procopius sheweth, and as their institution and manner of luyng to this day witnesseth.

Some there be, whiche referre the firste originall of the Turkes, to those tenne Tribes of Israell: whiche (as wee reade in Iosephus) were translated into Media. For profe and Testimonye whereof, they alledge the likenesse and similitude of their maners and conuersation.

Some referre their pedigree to Gog and Magog, of whome there is mencion made in the holie Scriptures: from whom, we rather be of oppinion that the Tartarians yea and peradventure also the Gothes be lineallye descended. And some there be whiche doo deriue the offspringe and Progenie of them: from the auncient Troians. Whose seuerall opinions by waye of Argument, either to confirme and allowe or confute and disproue, is no parte of our purpose and intent in this place, sythince our onely meanyng is not to reason vpon probabilities, but to bringe such certayne knowne

Wh ij

truthes

That was of
Ephraim
or White Hun
as Procopius
calls them.
in C. 1. c. 2. 7
of Persian Wars

The thirde Booke

truthes, as are in the histories and Chronologies of ancient writers aswell of Greekes and Thracians as of the Turkes themselves and other Nations confining vnto them, published and mencioned which is euen so as before we haue declared.

Muchumet therfore desired ayde of their Prince in his warres against the Caliph of Babilon, through whose helpe and valiaunce (sent vnto him vnder the conduct of Tangrolipix Mucalet,) he encountred with Pisafire the Babylonian Caliph, and him with litle labour and lesse daunger discomfited, by reason that the Arabians were not hable to abyde the thicke shotte of the Turkische Arrows. Being from this warre retourned home with victorie, he mynded also to vse the ayde of the same Turkes in his warres against the Indians. At which season the Turkes weary of that seruice, desired leaue of Muchumet, not onely to retourn home, but also that a garrison might be appointed to waite them in safetie ouer the bridge that stood vpon the Riuer Araxes. Which request he tooke in suche disdain and impaciencie & with frowning looke he charged them from thenceforth not to vize him any moze with that sute. The Turkes had no other way in their retourn homeward, but must needs passe the said Riuer Araxes, which is the limite and border of the kingdome of Persia: ouer the which there was no other bridge but onely this, which was on bothe sides merueylous strongly garbed and fortified with blocke houses, Turrettes and Garrisons. The Turkes bearing further dainger prynciallye shanke away & as closely as they could, departed into the desert of Carbonitis. For considering their number was not aboue thre thousande men, they durst not aduenture to fight and buckle with such a great multitude. Being in those desertes, they made many bagaries into the Saracenes Territories, and wasted theyr Countrey terrible. Whereat Muchumet

Of the Saracen Historie. 89

chumet merueylously stomacking and storming, sent an Armye of 30000. men against them, committing the charge and conducting of the whole Armie vnto tenne Tribunes of the noblest, stoutest and wisest in his traine. They being come nere to their enemies, would not aduenture to enter into the desert, for feare they should be distressed for lacke of water and victuall, but encamped themselves euen in the very entraunce into the same desert.

The Captaine of the Turkes, hauing intelligēce by his Espialles, of the Persians approach, called his Souldiours together, and making them priuie to his deuise, purposed suddenly to set vpon them and vnawares to surpise, both the Saracenes and Persians, while they were yet secure and mistrusted nothing. And speeding apace toward them by great iournages, within two dayes was come nere vnto them. The thirde night he set vpon them being in their Tentes carelesse and quiet, suspecting nothing lesse then any such matter: whom he put to flight euen at the first onset. After this discomfiture of his enemies, hee fell to spoyle and ransacke their Tentes, where finding great store of Wagons, Horses, and Money, lyued no longer by Robbery and Theft like a Vagabonde or fugitiue (as afore) but from thence forth pitched his Tentes and encamped himselfe abroad in the open playne. When the report of his victorie and good fortune was blowen abroad, there resorted vnto him from all quarters thereabout, all suche Cutthroates and Villaines as for their vngacious demerites feared punishment, with a great route of Slaues and pyles, ring Roges lyuing of the spoyle of others, insomuch that within a whyle his Armye grew to the number of 50000. men. Muchumet storming marueylously at this ouerthrowe and discomfiture of his Hoste, caused the eyes of those tenne whom he had appoynted Capitaines

Ab.iiij.

Tyrannye of
Muchumet
toward his
owne men.

The thirde Booke

aines to be pulled out, and threatened the rest of the Souldiours which fledde out of the Battaille, that so soone as he had vanquished his foes, he would cloathe them all, in womans apparell, and leade them as gazing stockes in Triumph before him. This done he himselfe in person marcheth against his Enemies. His men, who before had bene vanquished of the Turkes, considering the threats and shamefull handling that was ment towarde them, reuolted from Muchumet and fledde to Tangrolipix. Who now hauing his Armie encreased with such a warlike Crewe of freshe Souldiours, with all his whole power together, came against Muchumet, by dint of moztall battaile to trie and finally determine the cause of controuersie betwene them.

Muchumet with his power of Saracenes, Persians, Arabians and Cabirians well appoynted and armed, to the number of fyue hundred thousande, and a hundred Elephantes with Towers on theyr backes, mette his Enemye at a place called Aspacha: where betwene them was fought a cruell and bloudie Battayle and many slayne on bothe partes. In this conflicte, Muchumet, as hee rode vnstedfast from ranke to ranke, cheeryng his Souldiours and exhorting them to doe valiantly, by meanes of the soltering and stumbling of his horse, fell downe and brake his necke. He being once deade, his Armie fell to a Parley and composition with the Turkes, and so with one consente and wyll of all sides, Tangrolipix was proclaymed King of Persians. Who immediately opened a waye and passage for his people into Persia. Of whom a great multitude went thither, and oppressing the Persians and Saracenes, perforce possessed all the Countrey of Persia. They also honoured Tangrolipix by the stile or tittle of Sultane, whiche is as much to saye as a most

What a
Souldane
signifieth.

Of the Saracen Historie. 90

most Soueraigne Emperour or Kyng of Kinges. He displaced the Inhabitauntes of the Countrey out of theyr Offices, Roomes and Dignities, and placed his owne Nation and people in the same, and amonge them (empowering and bitterly oppressing the Countrey bozne persons) diuided and parted the whole Region of Persia.

Also Daber, Prince of Egypt, being in League and amitie with the Romanes, falsely by othe and promise whiche before hee had condescended vnto, and destroyed the Temple at Hierusalem wherein was the Sepulchre of our Saviour Chryst, and all the other holie places in the same. For Hierusalem at that tyme was vnder his obedience and dominion. And within a while after, hee sent a partie into the Isles called Cyclades to trie some maistries there: which partie was encountred and mette withall, by the Duke of Samos, who tooke xii. of them as prizes with all the men and Capitaines therein, and the rest to his bygge laude and glory dispersed and scattered.

After this, Argyropylus being Emperour of Constantinople, the Arabians wanne all suche Cities as Nicephorus and Iohn Zimisca had taken in Syria and slewe the Garrysons that were left to keepe them. And the Prince of Chalep with continuall incursions infested Antioche and diuerse other Cities and Countreies confyning vpon Syria, that were subiecte to the Romane Emperour. By whom also the Capitayne of Antioche (Constantine being yet a lyege) was shamefully vanquished, and hardly escaped with the losse of manye of his men. In whose office and roome the Emperour appoynting another, went himselfe with a competent number of well furnished Souldiours to snaffle the pretended outrage and insolent demeanure of the same Prince of Chalep.

Tha

The thirde Booke

The Chalepians hauing vnderstanding of his approche, sent Ambassadors with giftes and rewarde to meete him on the way and to desire pardon for their former temeritie and vndutifull behauiours towardes him, offering agayne to submit themselves and from thenceforth to become his true Vassalles and liege people. Whiche submission and peace, although manye of his Lordes and Capitaines exhorted him to accepte, yet hee hoping easely to subdue the Saracenes and thereby to purchase vnto himselfe a great name and glozy, would needs march on, and continue his voyage into Syria. And when he had strongly encamped himselfe nere to Chalep, the Arabians beinge bolde and nimble fellows, and naked, with good swift Horses vnder them, lyke Dimylances, planted themselves in euery corner in Ambushes. So yf any of their enemies went out on foraging or to fetch water they sodenly bzake out and either slew or toke the prisoners. By reason whereof both the Souldiours and their Horses fainted for thirste and were not hable to doe any seruice.

Emperoure
in great dan
ger.

Thus they being better acquainted and enured with these incursions and skirmishes toke heart a grace, accusing the Romanes of Slouth and cowardyse, and shewing themselves in great plumpes, descending sodenly from the Hylles with great shoutes and cryes, so terrified and dismayed the Romane Hoast, that they tourned their backs & fled. The emperor himself being there in great danger of his lyfe and forsaken of his Pretorian Souldiours which for feare shifted for themselves and left hym alone, had falle in the Lapse and bene taken Prisoner, yf one of his company had not set him vpon his Horse and aduised him to save him selfe by flight. The Saracenes supposinge this their fleeing to be done but for a pollicie and for the nonce pursued not the chase, but entred into the Emperours Tentes, where taking a few noble per-

sonages

Of the Saracen Historie. 91

sonages and spoylinge his rich Pavillion wherein was great store of Treasure and princely furniture, departed thence and retzred back lading their Horses with as much as they could cary away.

In their retourne back they ouercame the countrey of Mesopotamia. And y Egyptian Fleet wasted the coast of Illyricum, but they could not goe cleare away. For the Greekish Fleet encountered with them and burnt many of them, the rest which escaped by flight, by tempest were drowned in the Sicillian Sea. Also an other Pavy of a thousand Sayle or there about, being sent out of Aphrica, spoyled many Ilandes and places bordering vpon the sea Coastes. But the Romane gallayes chaunceing vpon them toke certayne, sonke many, and sent 500. of them prisoners to the Emperour. And George Maniaces, pryncost of all the Cities along the Riuer Euphrates, lying at Samosata, conquered and raised a citie called Edessa, wher he finding an Epistle of our Saviour Iesus Christ written with his owne hande, he sent the same vnto the Emperoure. This Citie afterwarde in the Emperours raigne of Michael Paphlagon was besieged by the Arabians, and had bene wonne if Constantine Capitaine of Antioch, and Brother to the Emperour had not succoured and relieved the poore Defendauntes that were within it.

After that the Prince of Egypt was dead, the Quene his wyfe being a Christian and her son concluded a truce with the Romanes, to endure for xxx. yeres, and caused the Temple and other holie places at Ierusalem to be re-tozed and newe reedified. About this time two Brothers both Saracenes, iountlie and with equall authoritie raigning in Sycilie, fell at discorde and variance betwene themselves, wherevpon the one of them desired ayde and assistance of the Emperoure. Who immediat-

Cc

lie

The thirde Booke

He sent George Maniaces a noble Counsaillour and expert Warriour with a tall compaigne of Men to ayde hym.

But befoze he could come into Sycile, the two Brothers were reconcyled and made Fréendes and ioyninge bothe their powers together to repulse, Maniaces from landing in the Ilandes, sent also for ayde to Carthage. But when both the armies were clasped together in battayle, the victorie fell vnto the Romanes, who gaue vnto the Saracenes a notable ouerthrow and slew of them a great number. Which done, the Generall rased and destroyed xlii Cities: and from thence marching still forwarde, recouered and restozed againe all Sycile to the Romane Emperre.

A pollicie
of the Saracens
to haue
taken the citie
Edessa,

But in the Orient, it was a sayze hap, that the Citie of Edessa had not bene surprisid by the Saracenes. For twelue of the chiefe Princes or Nobles of them brought fve hundred Camelles to Edessa, every one laden with two Chestes a peece, and in every Chest an armed souldiour, pretending and saying that their coming was, to present the Emperoure with certayne rewarde and giftes. Their intent was, if they might haue bene let in, the next night with their armed Souldiours in the Chestes to haue taken the Citie. But their subtile stratageme and crafty conueighance missed of hoped effect by this meanes.

A Begger
saues the
Citie,

There was a certayne Begger, an Armenian bozne, whiche could well vnderstande and speake the Arabian language. This poore Armenian begging the charitable almes of the Arabians which lodged abroad without the Citie, chaunced to heare one of them in the Chestes asking an other of his fellowes where they were, and immediately departinge from them went into the Citie, and discovered this trecherous traine to the Princes.

Who

Of the Saracen Historie. 92

Who by this meanes hauing ynckeling and intelligence thereof, lest the Princes of the Arabians banquetinge and making good chéere in the Citie, and with a conuenient number of Citezens issued out of the Gates, and openinge the Chestes, kylled all the armed men in the same. And coming back againe into the Citie, killed also all the Princes and Capitaines of them, sauing onely one, whose two handes he chopped off, and curtayling his nose and eares, sent him away packinge with a Flea in his eare, to carry newes home of their good spéede and aduenture.

On the other side, when the Caliph of Cairoan in Aphrica vnderstode of the losse and destruction of his Armies, he went himsele in person with a greater Armye into Sycile. Against whom, Maniaces came with a maine power, commanding the Armye all of his paye diligently to looke to his charge and so narrowly to scour the Coastes and keepe the Sea, that the vanquished Carthaginians shoulde by no meanes escape. And then both the Armies graped together in a terrible and moste sharpe conflicte, wherein were slaine so many of the Saracenes, that they could by no meanes be numbzed. But their Prince escaping out of the Féele, embarked himselfe with all spéede possible in a Brigandine and retourned home in safetie.

Now, Tangrolipix Kinge of Persia haupfge set all the affaires of his Kingdome in good stave and order, made Warre vpon Pisafiryc chiefe Governour of Babylon and ouercame him in many battayles and last of all slewe him.

And so the Babylonians being subdued and annexed to his Domynions, he sent Cutlume his Nephew with an Armye againste Carbesse Kinge of Arabie.

Cc ij

Di

The second Booke

Vaas Ma Khan

Of whom Cutlume being overcome, desired by his Ambassadors of Stephan Regent of Media (which countrey is now called Baas Prachan) to geue him leaue with his people to passe throughe the borders of his Countrey and iurisdiction. Which request, Stephan did not onely flatly denie, but also armed himselfe and went against him. Notwithstanding he lost many of his men, and was himselfe taken Prisoner. And so Cutlume retourning home to Tangrolipix, recompted vnto him his successe in the Median warre, and highly extolled the fertilitie and fruitfulness of that region, affirming that the same was verie easie to be wonne. But Tangrolipix being soze offended with him for his late discomfiture, went himselfe against the Arabians. Cutlume for feare fled away with his company, and taking a Citie of the Chorasmiors named Pafar, revolted from the Sultan. But the Sulcan thinking at this matter and letting it slippe for a while, helde on his voyage with his whole Host against the Arabians, by whom he also was put to flight, and so coming home with moze losse then gaine, with the greatest part of his Host besieged Cutlume. But Cutlume relying great trust and assurance in the naturall situation and strength of the place, long time resisted him. In the meane season, Tangrolipix sent Asan his other Nephew surnamed Surdus with .xx. M. wel appointed Souldiours into Media. Who rushing with his inuasive power into the Province, and ioyning Battaille with the Romanes was with his whole Host (excepting a very few) slaine. The Sultan vnderstanding therof, and minding to winne his honour againe for so notable a losse and ouerthrowe, sent one Alim Abramie with a hundred thousand fighting men into the same Province againe. The Regent of the Countrey sent to the Emperour for aide, & thought it best for him not to fight with the Turkes till Liparites, Princesse of a part of Iberia were come with his Iberians to

Turkes goe
to wrake.

Of the Saracen Historie. 93

to ayde him. The Romanes kept themselves within theyr fortes & strong Holdes, wherfoze Alim, seeing that they minded not to trie matter with him by force of battaille, assaulted a small vnwalled village called Arzen, where innumerable wealthy Merchantes dwelled, supposing the same would haue bene got and surrendred vnto hym at the first bzunt, & in a maner without resistance. But it happened not altogether according to his expectatiō. For the Colonnesmen stopped his wayes and passages, with great Timber logges & theyr dartes and other weapons at them from the toppes of their houses, and slew many of them. Alim after that he had giuen the assault vnto it by the space of sixe continual dayes, & sawe the stoute hearts of the Citizens in defending, and y he could not conveniently lye any longer at the Siege therof, theyr wilde fire into the houses, which flamed, and in every place so raged that the Inhabitants to saue their liues, fled. And by this meanes the Turkes manne the village. wherein they found much Gold and stoze of rycheesse which the fire had not consumed. From thence they discamped & sped them toward the Romane Armye, vnto whose ayde Liparites was now come with the power of Iberia.

Both the Battayles ioynnyng together a litle before nyght, the Turkes were discomfited and put to flight, whom the Romanes chased and pursued till farre in the nyght. Albeit in this conflicte Liparites (who ledde the one wing of the Battayle) was taken Prisoner and brought to the Sulcan, for whose raunsome and redemerie the Emperour sent a great masse of money and other rewarde to the Sulcan, desiring him also that a peace and league might be concluded betwene them. But the Sulcan sending backe all the money and gifts, frankly deliuered Liparites without any penie: aduising him after that tyme, neuer to beare ar-

Cc. iij.

mour

The thirde Booke

mour against the Turkes. And beside this, hee sent an Ambassadour vnto the Emperour, one of the worthiest in degree in all his Courte called Seriphes: which Dignitie is so high among them, that after the death of the Caliph, the Seriphes succeedeth in his roome. For the Turkes euen at the firste, embracing the doctrine of Mahomet, reuerented and had in great honour and estimation their Caliphas as Priestes and Bishoppes of their Lawe: notwithstanding they debarred them from wearing the Imperiall Crowne or entermedling with any iudiciall power in prophane matters within their Emprre. This stately Ambassadour, coming to Constantinople was brought before the Emperour, before whom he proudly shewed his Commission, which was, to demaunde a Tribute to be payde by the Emperour to the Sultane. But he was fayne to retourne without spending his errand. Wherefore the Sultane taking pepper in the nose, made warre and went himselfe agaynst the Romanes. And when hee was come as farre as Comium a Citie of Iberia, because the Inhabitantes of the Countrey had included themselves and their goodes with all thinges necessarie in Holdes and Castles (whereof the number at that tyme in Iberia was great) and hearing that the Romanes mustered and assembled a great power about Casarea, to come against him, hee retized without doing any notable exploit, worthy of remembrance backe agayne into Media: where likewise finding all places walled and Bulwarked, his full determination was to wyne his purpose by Siege.

And first of all hee attempted the wyning of Mantzicherte, a Citie standing in the playne champion Countrey, walled and strengthened with three stronge Walles, having within it many Fountaynes and

Of the Saracen Historie. 94

and lyuely Springes of Water, whiche Citie by the foresight and prouision of the Towneismen was verie well victualled. And encampyng hymselfe nere to the Walles, gaue an assault vnto the same. xxx. continuall dayes without any ceasing, with all kinde of Engynes and Warlike Instrumentes. But in the end, perceyuing his attempte to be in vayne, and hauyng no hope of better successe, rayled his Siege and departed with the losse of many of his people. Then he pursued his Nephewe Abramio, who was nowe confederate and tooke parte with his Cousen Cutlume, and him in Battayle nere to the Citie of Pasaris ouercame and slew.

But Cutlume with sixe thousande in his companye, (among whom was Melech the Sonne of Abramio, saued himselfe by flight, and by his Ambassadors sued to the Emperour Constantine Ducas to be receiued into his fauour and protection, and that a League myght be confyrmed betweene them: staying for an answer in Persarmenia at the Citie Charle. But because the Sultane solowynge at his heeles, was commyng with a power into Iberia, Cutlume fledde into Arabia Felix. The Sultane spoiled and wasted all as hee went in Iberia: but hearing that Michael was commyng with an Armye agaynst hym, and thinking it muche dishonorable for him to deale with the Emperours Seruaunt, retized agayne into his owne Territories, leauyng behinde hym, one of his Captaynes named Samuch, a man of base parentage and lowe birth, but in partiall affaires a ryght excellent Captayne. This Samuch remainyng still behynde, with 3000. men, coasted and strayed about the playne Countrey of the greater Armenia, and with many sodayne incursions infested the frontiers of the Roman Emprre.

After

After this Diogenes being Romane Emperour the Sul-
tan againe with a great power entred within y^e p^{re}ctinct
and limytes of the Romane dominions: But the Em-
perour comming with an Army against hym, hee rety-
red backe: and deuiding his Host into two partes, sent
the one into South Asia & y^e other into north Asia, which
spoyled all as they went, and sodaynly surprizing the citie
of new Cesaria: sacked it and being full laden with bootie
and pray departed thence. But the Emperoure when
he heard of it, takinge with him a Bande of lustier and
nimble Souldiours, coasting the neere way ouer hill
and dale, through thick and thinne, to get betwene his
enemies and home, so vigorouslie and sodaynly set vpon
them and therewithall so terrifyed and dismayed them
that they trustinge to their Legges, leaft all their
pray and cartage behinde them. Notwithstanding their
was no great number of them slaine, because the Ro-
manes (being with their long iournaie weared) were not
hable to folowe the chase farre, but they rescued and deli-
uered manie prisoners whiche befoze had bene taken.
From thence making his voyage into Syria, where hee
sent out part of his Army to Melitena, he brought home
from Chalep great Booties both of men and beastes, and
toke Hierapolis in Syria by surrendre.

After this, the Emperour (lying at Hierapolis) hearing
newes y^e the Turkes had banquished part of the Romane
Armies, sped himselfe thitherward in all hast to succoure
his distressed Souldiours and afflicted Subiectes. The
Capitayne of Chalep, hearing of this overthrowe geuen
to the Romanes, renounced his allegiance and fled with
all his trayne to the Turkes. And when the Enemies
had environed the Romane Campe round about, the em-
peroure without geuing any knowledge to them that hee
would fight, brought out his Armie and without the
sounde either of Trumpet or other manifest token, gaue
the

the charge and onset vpon them, and put them to flight
ere they had warning or time to resist. Then he buylte
and erected a Castle at Hierapolis, and after he had ta-
ken many other Townes, he came to Alexandria a citie
of Cilicia. And takinge order for the winteringe of his
Host, where they shoulde not be pynched with famyne
nor scarcitie of victuall retourned home to Constanti-
nople.

In the beginning of y^e next spring, y^e Emperour making
an other voyage to Cesarea, was certainly enformed y^e a
great company of Turkes foraged and spoyled that pro-
uince: whom after he had either slayne or taken, hee toke
his iourney to Euphrates: and there leauing parte of his
Army, vnder the conduct of Philaretus, he himselfe went
northward. The Turkes putting Philaretus his Souldy-
ours in great feare & ieopardie, got all their trinketes and
cartage, and marching forwarde into Cappadocia (was-
ting and making haucke as they went) came to Iconi-
um. a Citie at that time moste flourishing and renown-
med.

The Emperoure hauinge intelligence hereof at Sc-
bastia, spedde him thitherward. But hearing by the way,
that his Enemies had destroyed and rased the Citie, and
vpon the hute and report of his coming and appoche to
be departed, he deliuered parte of the Romane Legi-
ons to Cachagurio Capitaine of Antioch, commaunding
him forthwith to repayze to Mopsihestia, where the
Turkes shoulde passe, and there to set vpon them. But
ere they could come so farre, the Turkes were bidde to a
colde breakfast by the Armenians in the plaine of Thar-
sus, and distrussed in a manner of all they had: & hearing
further that the Romanes were planted at Mopsihestia
to receiue them, if they passed that way, fledde by night.

After this, in the beginning of the Spring, the Turks
eftsoones inuadinge and infesting the Romane prouin-

ces, were daunted and overcome by Mychael Comnenus, Generall and Chieftaine for the Emperoure: and within a while after, the same Michael being sent by the Emperoure into Syria with a lesse power, for certayne spight and hartburning bozne agaynst hym, was vanquished and taken of the Turkes. After this the Emperoure in person with a great power went into the orientall Provinces, and encamping at a place called Criapega, in a battayle whiche hee fought with his Cuenics (wher the Scythians that were in his Army forsoke him and fled to the Turkes) most manfully fightinge was taken and brought befoze the Sultane whose name then was Axan, for Tangrolipix was now dead. This Axan as he was a most pccile man and of great moderacion and prudence, when hee certayne knew that it was the Emperour (for he would not beleue it was he, till the Ambassadors, (vnto him befoze sent,) affirmed it was he indeede, and certayne Greeke Capitaines whiche hee had in Prison (being brought befoze him) fel downe and prostrated themselves at his fete) curteously lifted hym up from the ground, lying prostrate and kneelinge at his fete, as the custome and manner is for them that acknowledge themselves vanquished: and so lovingly embraced him as though he had bene his owne Brother, speakinge vnto hym these comfortable wordes folowynge.

Emperour
taken Prisoner.

Great curtesie of the
Sultane.

I would not wish you (moste noble Emperour) to lament and sorow for this your present chaunce and miserie. For such is the state and course of this worlde, that the fortune of Warre sometime allotteth victorie to one, sometime to another, humbleth one and aduanceth another. Your Maiestie hath moste puissantlye quitted your selfe in many notable Battayles, your valiaunt courage and inuincible prowesse in warlike affaires shall

shall euer be renowned and spoken of, yf you now shew your selfe to be no lesse patient and stoute in aduersitie then you were prudent and wise in prosperitie. Albeit at my handes you shall not be vsed as a Captiue and prisoner, but lyke an Emperour and as is most sitting for one of your estate.

And immediatly he appointed vnto him a most Princely and rich Tabernacle, with seruantes to await and geue attendaunce vpon his Person, and all other furniture meete for an Emperour. And caused him to sit at his owne table next vnto himselfe, and for his sake set at libertie as many Prisoners as he would demaunde. Which Princely curtesie argued that he had regarde to humane mutabilitie and fickle state, considering the same mischance might as well haue happened vnto hym. Thus these two mighty Princes keeping company famylerly together for certayne dayes, and talking most frendly one to another, at last established and concluded a perpetuall and infrigible peace for euer to continue betwene them, and vpon promise of affinitie by Mariage betwene their Childzen to be solemnised, hee franklie deliuered and frely dismissed Diogenes with a great traine of honorable Personages awaighting vpon him, and gaue vnto hym a riche sute of Princely Apparaile.

But after that Diogenes was at Constantinople murdered by his owne People, Axan the Sultane hearinge thereof and greatlie lamentinge his death, for reuenge thereof sent out his Armies, not now to pylfer and robbe as befoze, but to subdue and vtterlie to reduce the same vnder his subiection. Against whom, Michael Ducas the Emperour, sent Isaac Comnenus with a great power, who was overcome and taken of the Turkes and payde a great Summe of Money for his Ransome. After this, Cudume Sepheiu to Tangrolipix (as befoze hath bene declared) leuyinge a great Power

some the Citie of Hierusalem and some with much labour and effusion of bloud regained other Cities and there constituted a Christian Kingdome. Nowe, this while, the Emperour of Constantinople was in league with the other Sultan of the Turkes, who was Lord of the Provinces confining and bordering next unto Constantinople: for wee shewed before, howe that those Provinces were allotted and geuen to Cuclume, the which by his Heires after him enioyed, and Tangrolipix his Successours had the regiment ouer the Persians and Babylonians: and in Egypt there were yet remayning the remnantes and residue of the Saracenes.

But after the death of Cuclume and his Sonne (Sultanes of the Occident and Lordes of all Cappadocia) one Tanismanye succeded. Of these Christian Capitaines when they were arryued in safetie in Asia, the Turkes gaue a great ouerthrowe vnto Raymund, watching him at a vantage, when he was entred into the Countrey about Nice vnadvisedly without searche, and hym compelled to flie vnto a pooze desert towne called Exorgum: where after he had bin a certain space besieged & thoroughly wearied, with a fewe others yelded to his enemyes. The rest which would not yelde and submit themselves, after long Siege, were partly consumed in skirmishes and partly perished by famyne: and such as were taken alyue, were slaine euerie one. So many as were lefte, departed first to Nicomedia, and from thence remooued to Nice a Citie of Bithynia. Whiche Citie while they fiercely assaulted, Tanismanye or Solyman with .lx. thousande Turkes, yssued out and bent his full force agaynst that part of the Christian Campe which was ledde by the Bysshoppe of Podie: but the Frenche, stood so stoutly at the receipt, that the enemyes were easely repulled, and so at length the Citie of Nice was taken. After this there was a sharpe bickering and conflict with Solyman, at the fourth

fourth Tent pitch from Nicæa. For he had gathered together the power of the whole Orient, and had procured as much aide from else where as he could. The Iconium a Citie standing by Mount Taurus, the Seate Royall and Metropolitane Citie of Solyman, (which at this day is called Cogni) and the Pallace of the Princes of Phrygia (now called Caramania) and Heraclea were wonne. Afterwarde Baldwyne diuiding his Armye into two partes tourned into Cilicia, and tooke Tharsus, Edessa and Manussa: the greater Hoaste wyning Armenia, deliuered the regiment and rule thereof to Palmurus an Armenian.

After this good successe, they tooke Cappadocia, Cæsarea Sororgia and Sura in the Straits of Mount Taurus. When they had passed the Mount Taurus, the Turkes aduanced themselves in a faire plaine, but they were easily and with little adoe discomfited and put to flight by the Latines, and from thence marched straight to Antioch, a noble and strong Citie in Phœnicia, by which the river Orontes runneth (for there is another of the same name in Pamphilia, nere vnto Seleucia) and tooke the same by surrendre, by reason that the Turkes were afore vanquished in battaile and yelded themselves. In which battaile were slaine of the Turkes a hundredeth thousand, and .xv. M. Camelles taken.

During these byoies, the Venetian Fleete beyng CC. sayle and sent to ayde the Latynes, wanne a Citie in the Coast of Ionia called Smyrna: and the Latines after they had taken Antioch, wanne Rugia and Albaria and there wintered.

In the Spring folowing, departyng thence, they layde Siege first to Tortosa and Tripolis. The king of Tripolis submitting himselfe was receiued vnder protection, but Tortosa was verie stoutely defended by the Inhabi.

The thirde Booke

Inhabitants. Wherfoze rayling their Siege and passing ouer the Riuer of Zebul, Zabar and Brai, they came by priuie wayes and vnhaunted places befoze Berytus a Citie standing vpon the Sea coast, and from Berytus to Sagitta, and from thence the tenth day after, they came to Cæsarea, after ward to Rama and so at length they pitched their Tentcs and planted their Siege befoze the noble Citie of Hierusalem, whiche with most cruell bloudsheading and incredible labour was wonne, about y^e yere of our redemption one thousand and one hundzeth, & Godfroye crowned King therof. The streates in this assault stood full of congeled bloude y^e thicknes of a foote. But the Turkes & Egypciās leuyng a fresh power, renewed warre. Against whom, Godfrey with his Christian army marched, and finding them encamped at Ascalon, gaue them battaile and slew of them 100000 (oz as some say) 50000 and discomfited all the rest. But befoze that Hierusalem was taken, the Venetian Nauy coastinge alonge Lycia, Pamphylia, Cilicia and Syria, lay at Road in the Hauen of Ioppa, being then in the French Hoastes subiection, because thei might helpe the Christians with victual and necessary prouision: & waighing vp their Ankers they departed thence, & toke Ascalon, Porphyria (a Citie nere to Ptolemais) and Tyberias, Cities standing vpon the Sea side.

After the death of Godfroye who departed this lyfe within the Citie of Hierusalem, his Brother Baldwine was made King, and the rest of the Princes returned home. He thzough the aide and helpe of the Venetians, Genoways and Boemund King of Antioch toke Ptolemais, with Sydon and Berytus cities of Phænicia. But when that Boemund was dead and Tancrede his Brother succeeded in the Crowne and Kingdome of Antioch, (the Turkes & Egyptians againe inuading the frontiers of the Ierosolymitane Kingdome, Balwine sente for Tancrede

Of the Saracen Historie. 99

Tancrede to come and ayde hym, and then gaue vnto them battaile, but the Turkes discomfited him and all his Hoast, wherebpon with great losse of his men he retyzed to Hierusalem and Tancrede to Antioch: and the Turkes got into their handes the possession of Mount Sinai. Within a while after Baldwine dyed, and in his steade an other Baldwine surnamed Burgenfis was made King.

After ward in the raigne and Empire of Alexius Emperour of Constantinople, because Baldwine the seconde, sent for ayde to the Latines to withstand the malignant enterpryses of the Turkish Rakehellcs, an other voyage was made into Syria. Therein went VVylliam duke of Aquitanye, Hugh the Great, Brother to Philip the French King, Stephen Earle of Chartiers (lately returned home from y^e other expedition befoze) Stephen earle of Burgundie, and Tholouse. The Venetians also sent thither a great Nauy. The Christian Champions and Latine Capitaines with their Hoast after many afflictions, labours and sharp stroymes sustayned by the miscreants, insomuche that they were almost dispersed and scattered, came at length to Hierusalem. But Baldwine inconsideratelie fightinge with the Turkes befoze the comming of the other christians, was taken prisoner, his Host discomfited, and he himselfe brought to Carras, and after a time, payinge his Ransome was deliuered and set at lybertie.

But the Venetian Nauy encounteringe with 700. Sayle that belonged to the Caliph of Egypt, whiche laye at the Siege of Ioppa, ouercame them & toke the Citie of Tyre. During the time that they lay befoze that Citie geuing sundrie Batties and assaultes there vnto, there was a Doue sene, flyinge ouer their Campe and Tentcs (soz the Venetians had set parte of their men on shoze) carrying the Letters of the King of Damasco tyed

Ge

about

An other
voyage to
Ierusalem.

The thirde Booke

Politic.

aboute her neck, the contentes wherof was, that he with a great power, would shortly come to rescue them. The Souldiours seeing her lying ouer their heades towards the Citie, at one instant all together, shouted and cryed, which shout so deuided & cut the Ayre, that the Dore fell downe to the ground. Then the Venetian Capitaynes perusing and reading ouer the letters, forged others, like vnto them in pzeoprtion and wrighting, but cleane contrary in effect and meaninge, the tenor wherof was, that the besieged parties should shift for their sauegarde as well as they coude, and onely trust to themselues: for of him the could haue no ayde nor rescue. Whereupon they immediatly surrendered themselues and their Citie to the Chzistians.

The firste
beginninge
of the Assassines.

At this time, there reigned among the Saracenes or Turks a certaine kind of Sect of men called Assassines; which killing whosoener they listed (lyke theues & Murtherers) wrought much skath and harme to the Chzistians in Syria. And hereof it came, that afterwarde among the Italians, al theues & murtherers were called by the name Assassines. Which Sect first sprong vp (as it is reported) in this sort. One Aloadine a Saracenist reigned in that parte of Persia, whiche lyeth nexte the River Indus, not farre from the borders of the prouince of Arriana, vnder the Mount Caucasus (which Region at this day is called Mulehet. In the which in times past the Asacenes inhabited, of whom Arrianus speaketh in his hystorie of the Actes of Alexander the great, placing them betwene the rivers of Cophe and Indus: which Cophe (as I thinke) is that, whiche is called of Iosephus in his Iudaicall Antiquities Cuthus; & that into this Region those ten Tribes of Israel were translated.

This Aloadine hauing an intent to inueigle and persuade his people, that hee was hable to bringe all such to the

Of the Saracen Historie. 100

the fruition of a blessed lyfe, as obserued and kept his Lawes and commandements, had trimmed and planted in a right pleasant valley betwene two very high Hills moste goodlye Gardaines of solace, replennished with all kinde of fragraunt floures and beautiful Trees yielding smel & fruite most delectable. which gardains, were most finely contriued, and on euery side enuironed with notable gorgeous buildinges, garnished with Golde and other colours, and stozed with pzeious furniture and rich householde stuffe of value inestimable. In diuers places of the same, were Fountaines and riuers of Milke, Honey, Wyne and sweet waters. Within the same, also were fine Damoselles and beautifull Pucelles, which with Melodies, Songes, muscalle Instrumentes, mincing daunces, and all other allurements of Femynine flattereries, delighted and fed the tender eares of such as were brought thither. Moreover there were other the Seruantes and housewifelye Trulles, which being kept close within dozes, dressed all thinges that could be deuised or thought necessarie aswel for meate & drinke as for the pleasure and delectacion of the Chrestes and Strangers therein. All the place without was most curiously strengthened both by nature and arte. When this delightfull Gardaine of pleasure was fully ended and made perfect, Aloadine preached and professed himselfe to those downyish people to be the selow and Mate of Mahomet, and that he had power geuen vnto him, to dispose and bestow the benefit and fruition of Paradyse and blessed lyfe vpon such as should be to his lawes and bestes obeyssaunt. And of them he chose out certayne yong Stripelinges aboute the age of twelue or fouretene yeres, such as seemed to be of the best towardnesse and disposition for warres in time to come, whome he brought vp in his Hall or Courte.

Cety

And

The thirde Booke

And because they should with the moze willing myn-
obey his commaundementes and stirre at his becke, his
fashion was with some cōfectioned Potion to bying them
into a dead sleepe: which done, his custome was then to
transport & carpe them into y place of Cardaine: where
being awaked, they solaced themselves and had the fructi-
on of all kynd of pleasures for two or thre dayes space,
and then agayne beyng with the same drinckes brought
on sleepe, (as befoze they had bene) were carped out,
themselves knowing nothing at all thereof. And by this
meanes it came to passe, that after ward they refused nei-
ther perils nor Daungers to fulfill his mynde and com-
maundementes, but were willing and ready to sea and kil
whom he would commaunde, yea though they dwelled
in places distant farre of. And the number of them which
he had there, were about lx. thousand. Wherby his power
and his Successours after him (called Sexmountes)
grew and in such sorte encreased, that he instituted the
same order also in Syria, and had a Lieutenaunt vnder
him at Damasco. For there was of them as it were a
certaine order of knightes, whereof the chiefe President
and Maister was called Sexmount, and had diuerse offi-
cers of the order of this knighthode in sundry other pla-
ces. The Castle wherein these Cardaines were, was
named Tigad.

These Cutthroate Souldiours, with murthers and
robberies, made euery place in Asia dangerous and im-
passable to the Chyistians. But this Castle being after-
ward assaulted and besieged full seven yeres space by the
Tartarians, was in the end by them taken, and they with-
in utterly destroyed. This is the Historie of them, whom
some by mistaking do call Essenes, and some Arfacidas,
as we haue found in the most credible and approued Au-
thours.

After the death of Tanismany, the Occidentall Tur-
kische

Of the Saracen Historie. 101

kische Emperour began to be diuided. For one Muchumet
succeeded Tanismany, betwene who and Masute Pre-
sident of Iconium, was kindled certaine displeasure and
private heartburning. But the Emperour Iohn Comne-
nus entred into league and linked in amitie with Ma-
sute, whose both powers ioyned together went agaynst
Muchumet. At length for spight bozne to the Emperour
there was meanes found for a reconciliation and agree-
ment betwene the two Turkische Potentates, Masute,
and Muchumet: which being brought about and conclu-
ded, Masute abiured his former league and reuolted fro-
the Emperour. Notwithstanding, the Emperour raised
two noble Cities of Pontus in the Turkes possession, the
one called Castamon and the other Gangre. But within
a while after, Muchumet recovered them again, and sub-
dued Iberia also, with sundry places in Mesopotamia.
And Masute wanne Iconium with other places in Syria.
But making an enroade into Thracia, hee was talked
wythall to bys cosse, and put to flight by Manuel Com-
nenus. The Emperour glad above measure for this
victory, layde Siege to Iconium, but the Turkes set
theyr Stales so couertly, and brake out of an Ambush
so suddenly, that they discomfited his Host, and he hym-
selfe escaped very hardly.

The Chyistians in Hierusalem being soze distres-
sed by the Miscreantes, there was a thyrde Voyage
and expedition made thither, whereof was chiefe Cap-
taine and leader Conrade Duke of Franconia, who with
a great Armie of Germanes, Italians and Frenchmen re-
lieued the: and meeting wyth the Turkes (wyth whom
the Greeques had also conspired) nere by the Ryuer
Meander gaue vnto them Battayle. In which terrible
conflicte there was a merueylous greate slaughter of
Turkes.

After that Masute was deade, his thre Sonnes parted
the

Ge. iii,

Thirde
voyage to-
ward the
holy land.

The thirde Booke

the Kingdome among them, and afterward Iagupafanes and the Sultane of Iconium fell together by the eares for their moyties. In the ende Iagupafanes got the victorie, and the Sultane fledde for succour to the Emperour, who caried him to Constantinople with him, for a Triumph. And heere by the waye, I may not omit to declare a pretie Jest of a Sarracene Icarus. This merie fellow, attending vpon the Sultane, and bearing the countenance of a Juggeler, at a certaine solemne Iustes or Tylturnyng, voluntarily went vp to the toppe of a Turret standing in the Tyltyard at Constantinople, vnder y^e which Turret was the Tylte it selfe, where the Horses tooke their races and courses, and aboue, were those foure courageous and praising gilt Coursers which now stand on the toppe of the Church of S. Marke in Venice, directly opposite, & standing full but one against another. He standing on the toppe of this Turret craked and bragged that he would flie in the Ayre y^e space of a furlong. And hauing on, a large white garment, down to his foote, full of plaies, knotted and gathered round to haue in the ayre withall, he stoode fluttering for winde with his handes in fere of winges, and hauing (as he thought) sozed long ynough, at length committed his body to the curtesie of the wind, but falling dowayne headlong on the ground, hee bruised and brake all his bones with the fall, and there lyke a baine Cockscombe yelded by the Ghost and dyed.

Nowe, Manuel to the intent he would bee reputed and thought of the Sultane to be a Prince liberall, magnificent and mightie, dismissed and sent him away not without honourable rewardes, besyde a huge Masse of money and other most precious Wares: vpon condition, that hee shoulde rebeliue and restore vnto him the Citie of Sebastia, with the Suburbes of the same. But when the Sultane was returned to Iconium with his

One y^e took
vpon him to
flie in the
aire.

Of the Saracen Historie. 102

his money he returned to his former boynite, spoiling Sebastia and all the places neere aboute it, and tooke vpon hym the chiefe Soueraigntie and preeminence of all that Territorie: and dreyning his other brother Dadune out of the Countrey, and getting by force the Citie of Cæsarea, he went about also to supplant and ouerthrow Iagupasan.

Dadune got into his possession the Countrey of Amasia being without any possessor: but it was not long ere he was agayne expelled and dreyuen out by Clizastlan the Sultane, who bore all the swaye in Capadocia. This Clizastlan albeit he called the Emperour, father: yet he euer incroched vpon his Princes and spoiled his Countreies. Wherevpon, within a while after, a newe garboyle and hatred was kindled betweene them: for that the Sultane likewise charged the Emperour with breach of promise, in sundrye Articles and covenantes before condescended vnto.

The Emperour purposing with all his myght to be auenged of his Adversaries, and already conceyving in his mynde the destruction and utter subuersion of the Turkeish Nation, leuyed together all his olde beaten Souldiours, mustered newe Legions, and procured all the forayne ayde that hee coulde from any place, made a firme League with Baldwin King of Hierusalem, and retained in wages the Scythians consyng vpon the Ryuer Ister, and thus hauing a mightie and populous Army, with all thinges in good order and readines decently purueighed, (after he had made his prayers to Almighty God the gyuer of all victorie for his diuine assistance) marched forth in good order against them: His iourney lay through Phrigia and Laodicea Chonas S. Archangel, Lampis and Celenas where the head Spring of the great Meander is, into whiche the Riuer Marfyas

What trust
is in y^e promise
of a
Turke.

A good
Childe.

The thirde Booke

raſſie then aduiſedlie, chopped hardilſe into the ſame
Kreſas hauing his battel apointed in this order ſolow-
ing. The ſloward was led by the two ſuns of Angelus
Constantine whoſe names were Iohn and Andronicus,
with Macroduca Constantine and Lapardus Androni-
cus, with their Enſignes and Bards, and was marshal-
led in Lunare ranks or ſpined araye. The right wing
was led by Baldwine King of Hieruſalem, and the leſſe
by Maurozomes Theodorus. After them ſollowed the
Iudges, Skullions, Woodcarters, Cartes and all the
other baggage and Trinketrie of the Hoſt. After them
came the Emperoure himſelfe with the maine Battaille,
where in was a valyaunt Crew of choſen fellowes. The
Kerewarde was conducted by Andronicus Conto-
ſtephanus.

As ſone as they were entred within the Streights,
where there was no ſtaring hoales nor yet elbowrome
for the Hoſt, and the Bannes of Angelus Macroduca,
and Lapard ordering themſelues into a three ſquare bat-
taille, (ſmall beſore and thick behinde like vnto a wedge)
gaue the charge vpon the barbarous Turkes and by fine
force dzaue them backe from the Hilles and higher pla-
ces where they fought, into the Mountaines, and ſo per-
force, made for themſelues a through paſſage without any
hurt or daunger. But the residue of the Legions, ſollow-
ed after them nothing couragiouslie: neither did they let
their Archers in the flanks of their Battayle to gall
and keepe of the Turkiſh force as they ſhould haue done,
neither held they their Targetts cloſe together over their
heades like a vault, to beare of their ſhotte and blowes.
Wherefore the Turkes in thick pumps and with great
violence brake out on euery ſide vpon them from the high
er places into the lower ground and from the banks
where beſore they fought, into the plaine, and boldly en-
croched

Lamenta-
ble slaugh-
ter of Chriſ-
tians by
negligence.

Of the Saracen Hiſtorie. 104

croched, ſtill moze and moze vpon the Romanes till they
had pearced and broken their araye. And firſte puttinge
Baldwine his winge to flight, wounded and ſlew many.
Which when Baldwine perceued, with an intent to reſ-
cue and ayde his men in that diſtreſſe, taking with hym
a picked Troupe of expert Hoſemen, ruſhed in amonge
the thickeſt of his Enemies. Of whom he was ſo beſet
and on euery ſide circumuented that hee himſelfe was
there ſlaine, and all his men moſt valyauntlye fightyng,
likewiſe there dyled. This good ſucceſſe ſet the Turkes
on ſuch a glorious hoigh, that they ſtopped all the wayes
where the Romanes ſhould paſſe, meaning that day ſo to
plague the Chriſtians, that they ſhould neuer after be ha-
ble to attempt the lyke enterpriſe againſt them: for now
being enclosed in thoſe perillous Streights, and one hin-
dying another, they wer not hable to endamage nor hurt
their Enemies by any kinde of meanes, but rather hin-
dred and diſturbed one another, and were cauſe of one an-
others ſlaughter and lamentable deſtruction. So ex-
treemely coped in and pounded were they, that they nei-
ther could haue any help of the Emperoure neither yet
of the Kerewarde, neyther coulde they goe backe or de-
cline on any ſyde, becauſe the Cartes and carriage that
were placed in the middle like a Bulwarke or Rampire,
lettred them. Their Hoſes and men were killed lyke
ſheep, and with Turkes Falchions gozed and ſoynd
through. The Mallayes laye full of dead Corſes, the
wayes ſtenched with griſly ſightes of ſlaine perſons, the
Downes couered ouer with diſmembred bodies, the wa-
ters of the Riuers were coloured and ranne with bloude
of Men and Beaſtes mingled together: and to be ſhort,
ſuch lachrymable ſlaughter was in this place made vpon
the pooze Chriſtians, that the woſulneſſe thereof cannot
with Penne accoꝝdinglye be expreſſed.

ff y

And

The thirde Booke

And beside all other outrages and unspeakeable calamities, the Turkes pitched the head of Andronicus Bataza the Emperours Nephew, which had leued an Army out of Paphlagonia and Heraclea Pontica and was sent against the Amasene Turkes in Amasia) vpon a Speare point, and caried it befoze them for a mockage in derision. Which heauie spectacle and dangerous plight so vexed and inwardly grieved Manuel, that his minde was wonderfully perplexed, insomuch that he was euē at his wittes ende and wist not what to doe nor which waye to tourne him.

But the Romane Legions in the Toward, (as befoze was declared) hauing passed those pykes & deadly trappes helde themselves close together and for their sauegarde fenced in their Campe, vpon the toppe of a little Hill very conuenient and commodious (as the time then fell out) for their purpose. The Turkes with might and maine strived to ouerrunne and beare downe the Emperours battaile, because if they mighte once thoroughly disperse and subdue the greatest and strongest part of the Army, they thought the residue would easely and with small adoe bee vanquished, like as a Serpent when the head is bzyled and crushed to powder, all the other partes of the bodye (which befoze by themselves moued, being cleane cut of) do straightwayes die. The Emperour fought valiantly that day and oftentimes assailed the Turkes fiercely to drive them out of the Straights and to open the waye for his men to passe through, but perceiuing the power and force of the Turkes (which fought from the higher ground) still to encrease, and making his full account, that whether he taried or went forwarde, there was none other way for him and his company but present death, he exhorted his men first of all to repose all their hope in Almighty God and next in their weapons and handes, and that they should either saue their lynes by hardy blowes and

Of the Saracen Historie. 105

and valiaunt deedes or else by honest and glorious death wyne to themselves perpetuall fame and renoume: so he plainely tolde them that he saw none other way for the to escape cleare and harmelesse, but by such a famous aduenture. And y God would not vtterly forsake nor leaue succourlesse them that beare armour and fight in the quarrel of his holy Catholique Religion, for y aduancement of his glorious name, against the impious contemners and blasphemers of all religion, godlines, vertue and honestie, so that they would prostrate themselves befoze hym and with deuoute mindes (crauing his diuine assistance) valiantly vse y courage and power which his diuine Spiritie gaue, & inspired into their stomackes. And although their chaunce were then to be slaine, yet should they (hauing a most iust cause and quarell) for this their short and transitozie life, gaine and winne a double life: y one, euerlasting and most blessed in the heavenly kingdome, promised and prepared by our Lord and Sauour Christ for all such true Christians as sincerely worship and vnfeignedly beleue on his name, but namely and specially for such as spend their bloude and life for the loue of his holy word and setting forth of his glory. And y other is, a perpetuall fame and a worthy memoriall in this worlde among all posteritie, which would most assuredly for euer extoll & celebrate this their prowesse and constancy. But such as thzeu away their weapons, should for euer be ill reported of and reuiled in the mouthes and speeches of all men, as fugitiues, forsakers, & Traitors, of their Liege Emperour & as villaines vnthankfull & vnmindfull of God his benefites, and which is moze, should by God his own mouth be accurst and adiudged to endlesse paines & sempiternal tortures. Wherefoze he aduised the to plucke by their heartes, and by his example, every one to make for himself a way & passage with his sword. Where he had finished these his speeches with those few that he had left,

The thirde Booke

Valiant-
nes of the
Emperour.

he made streyght into the middell of his enemies, and after many woundes genen and taken on either side, breacking thzough the Turkes araie, and being so flashed and betwen in all his body that thirtie Arrowes oz therabout, sticke fast in his Target, and not able to take vp his own Wassenet oz headpéece that was stroken of, yet (maugre their heades) hee escaped and went thzough the thickest crowde of them. The other Legions were on euery side flaine and bzought to their bane, and troden down one of another. Such as escaped alyue and were passed these perillous Streites in safetie, were neuerthelesse slayne and quelled by their enemies in the other vallay, beyond. For the passage in that place was diuided into. xij. depe vallayes néere one to another: and begng at the first entraunce somewhat bzoad and rounye, was (the further a mā went in) streiter and narrower. All which places the Turkes had fortified & planted with their Ambushmētes and garrisons. Mozeouer, there sodainely arose such a terrible gale of blusterous and tempestuous windes, which tossed & raised by such habundance of Sand (wherof those places are full) the both the Armies most fiercely claspng together, bickered in the darke, as though it had bene at midnight, and killed all such as came in their reach without any respect whether they were friendes oz foes. And in the same place, (were they Turkes oz Romanes, hozses oz other cattel) it skilled not, for they dyed in heapes together one with another. And the valley where this cōflicte was, seemed to bee nothing else but a common & a large Sepulchre oz buriall place for them all.

But yet at this time, there died moe of the Romanes than of the Turkes, & specially of the nobler sort & such as were the Emperours néere Cosens & kinsmen. And many being there left halfe alieue, lay so buried & conered ouer w heapes of dead Carcasses the they were not hable by any meanes by struggling to get themselves out: neither was there

Of the Saracen Historie. 106

there any at hand to help them, for euery one had ynough adoe to labour & sweate for his owne life and saluetie. In this ougly sort, they long languishing in that kind of horrible & lothsome torment, wer in the end enforced there to geue vp the Ghost by a death most stinking, lothsome and lamentable. The Emperour himself panting and out of breath, was got al alone vnder a wilde Beare tree to take aire & recouer his faint powers, hauing with him neither Page, Henrma, yeman of his Ward nor kēper. Whom a poze cōmon Souldiour oz hozsemā of his owne troupe (being likewise thither escaped out of the battaile) finding in such miserable plight, breathlesse and comfortlesse, duntifully pitied and bewailed: and offering in the his calamitie, to minister vnto his Maestie the best seruice that hee was able, raught him vp by his Helmet & buckeled on his other Armour the lay here and there dangling about him. Which while he was in doing, a certaine Turke ranne hastily vnto him, & seeing no man there to defend nor rescue him, toke the Emperours hozse by the bzidle, meaning likewise to haue carted away the Emperour himself as prisoner. Whom the Emperour with a péece of his broken Speare the he had yet left, so blessed and bumbasted about the pate, the he laid him there on the ground to sleepe. Then ranne the other Turkes fiercely vpon him, to haue taken him alieue. Which he seeing, toke the same hozsemans Speare of who before we spake, and w the same run one of his enemies cleane thzough: while the said Souldiour w his naked sword, dubbed another of the hozter by the head, and so repulsd & kept the of, at the swordes point, till tenne other of the Roman souldiours came running to assist them. Then was he very desirous to haue ioyned himselfe to the other Legions, and most cozagiously gaue the aduēture thzough his enemies: but the heapes aswel of dead Carcasses as of Turkes encountering w him in euery corner as he went, much hindered and preiudiced his pretence.

A freend as
neede.

But

The thirde Booke

Friderick
drowned.

Horse in suche a pace as hee was hable. Him had fifty Turkes espied, and on ech side enclosed to haue taken, but he no moze stirred nor amended his pace for them, then if no man at all had pursued him. When they were clustered about him, he drew his sword, and sliced one of them so cleane in the middle, from the head downe to his backe, together with the Saddle of the Horse also, that the residue for feare to be serued with the same sauce kept a loose and durst not meddle. And after that this Frederick was drowned in a riuer, the Germanes returned home agayne.

About this time there sprong vp great discorde and sedition among the Turkes. For Clizastlan the mightie Sultan of Iconium, when he dyed, left foure Sonnes behind him, Masute, Coppatine, Rucratine and Chaichosroes. Vnto Masute he bequeathed the principalltie of Amasia, Ancira, Dorylæum and certaine other cities of Pontus. Vnto Coppatine, hee gaue Melitene, Cæsarea and the Colonie nowe called Taxara. Vnto Rucratine, hee allotted Amisa, Docca and the other Cities vpon the sea Coastes. Chaichosroes possessed Iconium, the regall seat of the Sultans, and with it Lycaonia and Pamphylia and all as far as Cottyanium. Coppatine being dead, Rucratine and Masute fell together by the eares and stroue for his Segniorie and enheritance. But Rucratine for that he was a wittie and skillfull man in martiall affaires, got the victorie and wyped Masute his nose cleane from all his principalltie of Coppatine their late Brother. And being now all in his iolytie and ruffe for this his good successe & victorie, & hauing a monethes mind to catch into his hands Iconium also, denounced open warre and sent his defiance vnto his Brother Chaichosroes whose Mother was a Christian, vnlesse he woulde resigne his Crowne & geue place vnto him ouer all his Soueraigntie. Wherevpon Chaichosroes fled for his refuge and ayd to the emperour

Of the Saracen Historie. 108

peroure Alexius Angelus as his father had done before him, albeit not with so good fortune and speede as his father, for hee was sent home agayne thence without his purpose. He was scantly come to Iconium, but hee was expelled by Rucratine and diuen to flee to Lebune king of Armenia: of whom he was frendlie receiued and courteously entertayned: but as for release and ayde he gotte none, wherefore hee returned to Constantinople and there in poore estate passed out the rest of his dayes.

During the Emprye of this Alexius Angelus, the Venetians tooke Constantinople and Angelus being thence disthroned, the Greekes in Asia created Theodorus Lascaris his Sonne in Law, Emperoure, who had vnder his Empire and obedience not onely Bythinia and the Regions along the Sea, but also extended the Lymittes of his Dominions very farre into the maine Lande, and had vnder him all from Caria and the riuer Meander Southwarde, to the Sea Galaticum and Cappadocia Southward, and constituted his Imperiall Seate at Nice. Which so tickled and fretted Alexius, that he passing the Sea Egæum entred into Asia, and priuily went to Iachine the Sonne of Rucratine (being now Sultane) in pittifull plight & poore rayment: before whom he in suppliant wordes opened his state & fortune, & humbly besought him of aide & succor to restore him to his lawfull Emprye and Crowne, vnjustly by an vsurper detained & withholden: not forgetting to put him in remembrance of the former frendship which afore time he had shewed & borne to him while he was in prosperitie, and further promised hym great Summes of money. Insomuch that Iachine taking compassion vpon him and moued greatly with his large promises, forthwith dispatched Ambassadors to Theodorus, threatening warre and destruction vnto him, vnlesse he gaue place to his father in law & suffered him quietly to enjoy his rightfull Diademe and Imperiall authoritie.

Emperours
deposed by
his Sonne
in law.

Cap. ii.

After

The thirde Booke

them out of that poore plot and beggerly region, which affronteth Persia and the Caspia Sea (almost Islandwise) and is environed on ech side with the Scythian Ocean, and ioyneth vnto Asia by one onely Isthmus or narrow porcion of land lying betwene the two Seas, the which is compassed and enclosed with the highe and inaccessible Mountaines called Riphæi as it were with a Wall or Rampier: the waues of the Sea (sayeth Hayton the Armenian) going backe, and making way for them to passe betwene the Mountaines and the Sea. And therfore all those Scythians after ward, of y Tribe wherof their first Emperour was descended, were called Tartarians: whose auncient descēt and beginning many (as before we haue sayde of the Turkes) doe referre vnto the tenne Tribes of Israell, whose opinion I doe not see howe it standeth with reason nor whereupon it is grounded. This am I perswaded and this seemeth vnto me most like and probable, that the Scythians be descended of Magog the sonne of Iapetus, of whom the Scripture in many places maketh mention: and that those tenne Tribes were by the King of Persia translated not into Scythia but into Media. But howsoever the matter goeth, the Tartarians in such sort as we haue declared, ysuyng and in great companies departyng from the Hyperboreans vnder the conduct of Cangio, (whom for honours sake they called Cham, which is as muche to say as a most high and Soueraigne Emperour) tooke their way downe along to the Sea Caspium.

In the meane season, Cangio the Cham departing this lyfe, his Sonne Hoccota succeeded in his place, a man right wyse and valiaunt, and the eldest of twelue brothers. He sendyng out Gebesabada with a hygge power to subdue and conquere the regions of the Occident, and himselfe in person passing the Caspian Streites, Sogdiana,

Of the Saracen Historie. 110

Sogdiana, Bactrian, Oxo and the ryuer Sogdus (whiche is encreased wyth many and the same great Springes flowing and running into it) wyntered at the foote of Mount Taurus, solacing himselfe and enioying the fruitfulnessse of that region and suche boote as he had before taken. This Mount Taurus is the greatest Mountaine in all the world, whose ridge & top hanging still together without any partition, hath his beginning Westward nere the Sea Egeum and stretching a long to the Ocean Orientall, diuideth all Asia into two parts. This Hill is also called Caucasus. The next Spring when the ground was new clothed & decked with the fresh attyre of greene grasse & pleasant floures, they discamped from y foote of Caucasus, & like an innumerable sort of Sheepe, mounted to the toppe of the Mountaines, inuading the Countreyes vnderneath them: and after they had there, made great pillage and taken their pleasure, they pearced into India, all about the Bankes of the noble ryuer Indus on either side: constituting the Ocean, for the limitte of their Emprye. And there building a Princely Citie called Cambalu most beautifull sumptuous and large, and for all pleasure of man the most delectable and pleasantest Citie in all Asia, appointed it to be their chiefe Palace and Seate Royall. After ward, exployting his warres by Deputies and Lientenautes whom he made Chieftaines and Generalles ouer his Armyes, choosing them to such as were eyther his brothers or else of the bloude Royall: some of them went Southwarde, some Westwarde, and some Southwarde: and after they had subdued the Arachosians Caramanians & sundry other Nations, wonne Persia and thence expelled the Turkes: they then came to the Chaldees and Arabians. From thence they marched agaynst the Babylonians, and Assyrians and conquering Mesopotamia, brought vnder their subiection the Persians, Parthians and Medians.

Cambalu a
noble citie
of India.

After

The thirde Booke

After this, going by by the greater Armenia, wth incredible celeritie they overcame Colchis northward, and Iberia that confineth hard vpon it, insomuch that their state surmounted, and flourished in fame and hono^r exceedinglye. Now, this mightie Tartarian Prince was purposed to make the Sea on euery side the limits and bounds of his Empire, but the pleasaunt delicacies and amiable soyle of the Countrey of India, so mollified and effeminated his mind, that beinge loath to departe thence, he settled & staid there, and distributed the Prouinces, Cities, Houses, fat Farmes and Tenements amonge his soldiers and people, and receiued the Rites, Ceremonies and Customes of the Assyrians, Persians and Chaldees.

Wherefore as soone as these Tartarians hauinge passed the Caspian Mountaines, had suddenly and sozible surprised Alexandria, a citie standing nere y^e Streits now

of Israell, whose opinion I doe not see howe it standeth with reason noz wherebpon it is grounded. This am I perswaded and this seemeth vnto me most like and probable, that the Scythians be descended of Magog the sonne of Iapetus, of whom the Scripture in many places maketh mention: and that those tenne Tribes were by the King of Persia translated not into Scythia but into Macedonia. But howsoever the matter goeth, the Tartarians in such sort as we haue declared, passing and in great companies departyng from the Hyperboreans vnder the conduct of Cangio, (whom for honours sake they called Cham, which is as muche to say as a most high and Sonneraigne Emperour) toke their way downe along to the Sea Caspium.

In the meane season, Cangio the Cham departing this lyfe, his Sonne Hoccota succeeded in his place, a man ryght wyse and valiaunt, and the eldest of twelue brothers. He sending out Gebesabada with a hygge power to subdue and conquere the regions of the Occident, and himselfe in person passing the Caspian Streites, Sogdiana,

Of the Saracen Historie. III

(as needes must) that great dearth and starstie was in all the countrey, and their Treasuries also with the charges and costes of so long continuance were in maner emptied and cleane exhausted.

Wherefore beinge now by this newe attonement and League ridde out of the same and brought to quietnesse, he bent his whole minde an other while to the seats of peace, the sweet Pource and Storehouse of plentifulnesse and aboundaunce. And because he would by his example prouoke and stirre by the rest of his subiectes to doe semblable, (like a good Householder & one fit to be a Prince amonge people) vnderooke to procure & cause so much of the vnbusbanded ground as was neither fit to beare cozne noz good to plant vines, to be touned by and tyllid: and manured so much thereof, as he thought woulde be sufficient for the expences of his owne Table, & for the maintenance of all them whom of his more liberalitye and

mounted to the toppes of the Mountaines, and by the Countreyes vnderneath them: and after they had there, made great pillage and taken their pleasure, they pearced into India, all about the Bankes of the noble ryuer Indus on either side: constituting the Ocean, for the limite of their Emprye. And there building a Princely Citie called Cambalu most beautifull sumptuous and large, and for all pleasure of man the most delectable and pleasauntest Citie in all Asia, appointed it to be their chiefe Palace and Seate Royal. Afterward, exployting his warres by Deputies and Lientenautes whom he made Chieftaines and Generalles ouer bys Armyes, choosing them to such as were eyther bys brothers or else of the bloude Royall: some of them went Northwarde, some Westwarde, and some Southwarde: and after they had subdued the Arachosians Caramanians & sundry other Nations, wonne Persia and thence expelled the Turkes: they then came to the Chaldees and Arabians. From thence they marched agaynst the Babylonians, and Assyrians and conquering Mesopotamia, brought vnder their subjection the Persians, Parthians and Medians.

Cambalu a noble citie of India.

After

The thirde Booke

After this, going by by the greater Armenia, wth incredible celeritie they ouercame Colchis northward, and Iberia that confineth hard vpon it, insomuch that their state surmounted, and flourished in fame and honoz exceedinglye. Now, this mightie Tartarian Prince was purposed to make the Sea on euery side the limits and bounds of his Empire, but the pleasaunt delicacies and amiable soyle of the Countrey of India, so mollified and effeminated his mind, that beinge loath to departe thence, he settled & staid there, and distributed the Prouinces, Cities, Houses, sat Farmes and Tenements amonge his souldiours and people, and receiued the Rites, Ceremonies and Customes of the Assyrians, Persians and Chaldees.

Wherefore as soone as these Tartarians hauinge passed the Caspian Mountaines, had sodainly and forriblie surprisied Alexandria, a citie standing nere y^e Streits now called the Iron Gates: the Imperiall Sultane of the Turkes greatly terrified and dismayd with this sodayne irruption of a new and most fierce people and fearing lest if he should be driuen and enforced to enter into Warres with the Tartarians, his olde Enemies the Romanes would be readie to set on him behind at his backe, sent his Ambassadors with full authoritie and commission to the Emperour, to confirme and strike an vnitie and peace betwene them: which thing the Emperoure as beinge encumbred with European Warres) was very glad of, and willinglye therevnto condescended, because the Turks should be as a strong Rampier and Wall in Asia for him, against the inuasion of the Tartarians. This League therfore with the Turkes was of al handes gladly embraced, and to the Greekish Empire most conductible. For whereas men (being so long time afflicted wth the lamentable calamities of long Warres) had neither occupied tillage, nor byed by Cattayle, it fell out in th'end (as

Of the Saracen Historie. III

(as needes must) that great dearth and scarcitie was in all the countrey, and their Treasuries also with the charges and costes of so long continuance were in maner emptied and cleane exhausted.

Wherefore beinge now by this newe attonement and League ridde out of the same and brought to quietnesse, he bent his whole minde an other while to the seats of peace, the sweet Pource and Storehouse of plentifulnesse and aboundaunce. And because he would by his example prouoke and stirre by the rest of his subiectes to doe semblable, (like a good Householder & one fit to be a Prince amongst people) undertooke to procure & cause so much of the vnbushanded ground as was neither fit to beare cozne nor good to plant Vines, to be toured vp and tyllid: and manured so much thereof, as he thought woulde be sufficient for the expences of his owne Table, & for the maintenance of all them whom of his more liberalitie and bountifull goodnesse he had retayned and taken into his charge to keepe and see cherished, that is to witt, the poore, diseased, & impotent people, vnto whom he assigned houses and Hospitalles, and appointed also certaine Granaters and ouerscers such as were trained by & had the skill of Tillage and Vine planting. Which officers layed by y^eerely in his Storehouses and Graners great prouision and store of the ouerplus of the cozne. He also had abundantly stored himselfe with Oxen, Wyne, Horses, Sheep Swine and with diuers kindes of tame Byrdes, by whom he y^eerely receiued great encrease and profyte. This not onely did he himselfe, but also by his example, occasioned others of the Princes and Nobility, his Cousins and Allyes to doe the lyke, so that enery one, hauinge of his owne competentlie wherewith to liue, the Communalitie should not be oppressed, nor the inferiour sort by force and extortion of the richer impouerished, with any intolerable Tributes, Assesments and Paymentes.

Peace
bringeth
plentie.

The good
example of
the Prince
doth muche
good in a
Reame.

The thirde Booke

By this means, the Romane weale publique was scow-
red and cleane purged from all notable exactions, and by-
bing pyllages inso much that within fewe yeres space, e-
uerie man had his Barnes and Cellers full stozed and
stuffed with Cozne and Wine: and such encrease of cattel
Hens and other homish Foules, that the high waies and
Streets, Stables and Sheepe cotes, Houses and Gardens
were breeth hable to holde them.

A blessed
plentie of al
things cau-
sed thzough
peace and
good go-
uerment.

This golden state and blessed felicitie was hereby al-
so the moze augmented, soz that the Turkes were with-
in themselves merueilouslie pinched and afflicted with
great hunger, dearth and penurie of Cozne, whereby it
came to passe, that all their Golde, Syluer, Jewelles and
precious Wares thzough this godlye sozcaste and diuine
wisdomme of the Emperour, came into the hands and pos-
session of the Romanes, soz then might a man haue seene
them faine to choppe and chaunge their rich Wares for a
litle bread Cozne, to sustaine themselves withall: and e-
uerie Wynde, Dre, Cow or Kidde was solde at an exces-
sive price. All the wayes were pestered full of Turkysh
Women and Childzen of the Turkysh Nation cominge
to and going from the Romane Provinces.

A Crowne
Imperiall
for the Em-
peresse bought
with the
money that
was had of
the Turkes
for Egges
in the tyme
of dearth.

The Emperesse also of the ouerplus of Hennes egges
(soz they were not possible to be all spent in her house and
Famylie) at that time solde at a very high price daylye to
the Turkes, had got together in short space such an incre-
dible Masse of Money as was sufficient to pay for a most
rych Crowne of Coude set full of orient Pearles and
precious Stones, whiche soz that cause the Emperours
called and feared Ouata, because it was bought with
Egge Money: so in short time the Emperour enriched
himself and all his Subiectes with Wealth exceedinglie.

During this while, the Tartarians. vnder the leadinge
of their Capitaine Baydo, marching and making impres-
sions into the frontiers of the Turkysh countreys, the
Sultan

Of the Saracen Historie. 112

Sultan of Iconium, leuying as great a power as hee was
able of all Nations (soz he had then with him of Greekes
and Latines, that is to wit, of Italians, Germanes and
Frenchmen, two Cohortes or Bands. Ouer the Gree-
kish band was Capitaine one John Liuenada a Cyprian
bozne (or as some say, one Paleologus) who earst had re-
uolted from the Emperoure: and ouer the Latines was
Boniface Moline one of the nobilitie of Venice) euerie
man being bzaue in apparell & well appointed wth Penons
and flagges of their owne Armes. With these couragious
personages, marching against the Tartarians, he met wth
them in a place neere to the Citie Arscor in the great Ar-
menia called Coldrach. The Tartarians so sone as the es-
pied this straung Army apparailled contrarie to the guise
and fashion of that countrey, supposing some greater ayd
and succour had bene sent vnto them, were merueilously
dismayd & astonied, and if one of y^e Sultane his kinsmen,
soz an olde gruge, had not in the beginning of the battaille
fled vnto their side wth a great crew of pertakers, they wold
haue tourned their backs and fled, But the occasion ther-
of was the cause at that time of the Turkes ruyn and o-
uerthrow, & afterward almost brought al their kingdom
& principallitie in subiection to y^e Tartarians. For y^e Tar-
tarians obtaining the vpperhand & victorie in this conflict,
neglected not the oportunitie & good chaunce that Fortune
now offered them, but passed y^e riuer Euphrates and sub-
dued Syria as far as Palestina & Arabia. After after thei
had assessed yereley tributes vpon y^e remnaunts of y^e Syri-
ans, Arabians, & Phænicians, they laded themselves wth
many rich booties & spoiles, & returned againe into y^e or-
ient. But the next yere folowing, thei passing Euphrates
againe tooke their way Northwarde into Cappadocia,
& went as far as the riuer Thermoodon: and taking I-
conium the chiefe Citie that belenged to the Turkes,
Azatine the Sultane beyng banished with his Brother
Melcke

The thirde Booke

Melecke fled for succour to the Emperour Michael Palologus, whom not long before (in like case and respect fleeing unto him for comforte and aide) he had pleased honorably and entertained with all pointes of princely curtesie. And putting him in remembrance of his former friendship shewed unto him in his neede & distresse, and unfolding before him the pitifull plight of this his present state and calamitie, instantly requested him, either to ayde him against his Capitall foes the Tartarians, or else to assigne him some peece of ground or odde corner (as it were a colonie) where he & his people might repose themselves in some more ease and securitie: for he had brought with him his Wives and Children and many Seruauntes, with much wealth and riches. The Emperour, for that he was on every side encombrd and wapped in Warres, would in no wise diminish any part of his own power, and as for the assignement of any part of his Countrey, to such a great Potentate as had bene a mightie Monarch and Prince over many Provinces, and also from his tender age ever brought up in princely pompe and stately preheminance, he iudged a thing very dangerous. For he considered, and wisely imagined that the Lordes and nobilitie which were under his rule and authoritie, would seeke their Lord and Maister where ever he should be, and that his people being scattered and dispersed in diuers places, like the wandering Planetes in the night, would flocke together and concurre to him that goeth before them with a Linke and leade the way. So would they come running to the King, and so perchance in the end, worke unto the Romanes some mychle woe and disturbaunce. And therefore soothing him out with faire wordes and nosegayms in good hope, he kept him at a doubtfull state, without geuing any resolute answer to his requestes. Azatine, for that his Parentes were Christians and he himselfe

Pollice in
Princes.

Of the Saracen Historie. 113

also Christened & washed in the Sacrament of holy Baptisme in his infancie, resorted dayly with the Emperour to Sermons and hard & holy Scriptures, dayly preached and remained so long with the Emperour, till at length by the meanes & helpe of the Europa Scythians, he made an escape and fled with his Sun Melecke out of his towne Aenum and passed the ruer Ister and within a while after dyed, and Melecke by Sea passed into Asia to the Tartarians, and of them obtained the Kingdome of the Turkish Nation, as his fathers inheritance. But a certayne Duke named Amuric with a Warlike power him encountered and overthrew, so that he was faine to flee unto Heraclea, a Citie of Pontus: and win a while after again returning to his natie Countrey & recovering his fathers kingdome, win short space was trayterously murdered.

Thus was the Turke Empire subuerted and brought to finall ruine, and from a State of well ordered discipline and magnificence, fell to utter decay and extreeme confusion: the cause whereof was, for that, not onely the Nobilitie and higher Powers dyuided the Kingdome into many sections and partes, but many also of baser degree and obscurer Parentage, (associating unto them the rascall Peasauntes and bulgar sort) practised pylfering and roberie, carying nothing with them but their Bowe and Quiuer of Arrowes: and taking by their Rowle in the Streites of the Mountaines, made many roades into the Countreys about, and the Cities belonging to the Romane Empire. For it happened a little before, that the garrisons defending the Castles & fortresses of the Emperour, for want of payment of their fees, & yearly stipendes at the Emperours handes, would serue no longer but departed thence, whych being at the first (as a thing of small waight and moment) neglected, was in the ende the cause, that the Romane Emperour sustained and incurred most greuous dangers and calamities. For

W. iij.

When

The thirde Booke

When the Turkes were displaced and expelled by the Tartarians, they displaced and expelled the Greekes, and looke howe weake they were in comparison of the Tartarians, so stronge were they against the Greekes: insomuch that at length the matter was decided with open warre and dent of sword. For the Emperour understanding that a great power of Turkes were by in Paphlagonia, leuyed a very competent Armye, to repressse and (as much as might be) to inhibite their violent insolencie, least if they shoulde bee still suffered impunely to raunge & spoyle without resistance, it might breed further daunger and inconuenience. And therfore when hee had assembled his power together, he sent the same being wel appointed against them, who encountering y^e Turkes, had of them the victorie. But whilest they disorderly and ouersarre in chase beyond the ryuer pursued them, they fell into the bandes of an Ambushe which the Turkes y^e night before had there layd for them. By meanes whereof they being on th^e one side beset with an Host of freshe shouldours well appointed in battle aray, and on th^e other side pent in and enclosed with the ryuer, they were slaine almost euery man. The Turkes triumphing for thys successe and victorie, enroaded afterward within the Roman Territozies, and came as farre as the ryuer Sangarius, and subjugated vnder their obesaunce, all from the Pontique Sea and Galatia to the Sea Lycium and Carium and the ryuer of Eurymedon.

Mamalukca.

At this time also, the Mamalukes (which word by interpretation signifieth Seruauntes or Slaues) obtained the Kingdome in Egypt, and aduanced the limittes of they^r Emppze into Aphrica & Lybia as farre as Gades: and subdued Phœnicia and Syria and all the Countrey loyning vpon the Sea coastes.

Howe, how this came to passe, we wyll declare. The Caliphes

Of the Saracen Historie. 114

Caliphes and all the Saracenes, lulled in ease and noleled in effeminate nyctenelle, (engendred by the delicious and tender allurements of that pleasaunt Climate and region) became so slothfull, that althoughe they possessed a most wealthy and fertile kingdome, yet were they easie to bee vanquished and subdued by any: and the Caliphes being all geuen to lust, Sensualitie and pleasures, tooke no care to any thing, neyther attempted any enterpryses themselves, but executed and administred all their Affaires by a Vicegerente which was called an Admyrall. Therefore when as Baldwin King of Hierusalem had made y^e Kingdome of Egypt tributarie vnto him (which tribute Almericke his brother and Successour claymed as due and payable vnto him, and the Egyptians flatly denying the same:) Almericke with an Army entred into Egypt and in the deserte vanquished in battayle Dargan the Admirall of the Kingdome wyth all his power, and compelled him to flye for his sauegarde into the Clitie Bilbis. This was about that time of the yere, whē the ryuer Nile, by course had his yereely incremente and ouerflowed his Bankes, whose Dammes and Schuses y^e Egyptians of purpose brake downe, because they would stoppe Almericke from further pursuite and victorie: wherefore laden wyth spoyle and ryche bootyes of hys enemyes hee rettyed backe agayne into hys owne Countrey and Kingdome, for feare least hee wyth hys whole Host if they had longer tarped, should haue bene drowned and swallowed by with the mercurielle water.

This ouerthrow and aduerse fortune of Dargan, gaue occasion to Sanar (whom the same Dargan a lyttle before perforce had displaced and put out of the office and dignitie of Admyrallship, and caused to flye for succour to the Arabians, hys Tribe fellowes) to go to Norandine the Sonne of Sanguin y^e most mighty King of Damasco, by him to be shrowded from the malice of hys aduersary.

And

The thirde Booke

that Realme and Countrey, eftsones invaded Egypt and took by force the Citie Bilbis, shewing much crueltie with fire and sword to all sortes of people, sparing neither age nor sex. Wherefore Sanar desired ayde of Norandine, & upon promise of great Summes of money, so long staied and repelled the impetuous course of Almerick his victorie, till such time that his ayde came, of whose coming when Almerick had understandinge, he raised his Campe and departed out of Egypt. Wherefore Syracon who had the leading and conduct of Norandines men finding Egypt without any foine ayde or succour marched draught to caye the chase & royal Citie of the whole Realme, and then Sanar comming out to payle and confer

rentage nothing worshipfull.

With these aydes, did Sanar boldly invade Egypt, at whose coming Dargan being merueilously abashed, desired ayde of the King of Hierusalem, couenauntinge and firmly promising, inuolablie to obserue a perpetuall League with hym, conditionally that he would now at this pinch helpe him. But before his ambassadors were returned with any answer, he was by one of his owne men shot through the Body with an Arrow, whereof he immediately dyed, hauing now already gotten the upper hande of Sanar and the Turkes at one entier Battaille. Whereby Sanar (as wel as though he had bene the victour indeede, obtayned his purpose, and put all his kinsfolkes and famylier freendes to death.

The Caliph all this while as though he had bene lulled in a sound sleepe, gaue himselfe onely to voluptuousenes, ease and ryot. For he cared not who ruled the roste, nor who executed the affaires of the common wealth so that he might haue y name and be called the Supreme Lord and

Of the Saracen Historie. 116

the whole kingdome. Perceiuing therfore that the people byed and bozne in the Southen quarters were both apter and also stouter for the warres then the Southerne bozne were, entred into League with certayne people inhabiting about Maxotis and Pontus, called Circassians (of Plinie and olde writers, Zigians) and bartered with them for an entercourse of Merchandise betwene them & him, namely that they should serue him of Boyes and young Striplinges at a certaine price. Who beyng brought into Egypt and from their youth trayned by the seates of chivalrie and warlike discipline, should do nothing but handsomely practise the handling of their weapons and artillery, & when time required serue in warres and should haue the ordering of all honours and dignities

he ment to to use ayde, for a grudge and hatred that he bore to his aduersarie. And leuying a great power of Arabians, Persians and Turkes which obeyed the Babylonian Bisshop as their head, and takinge as much victuall with them as would serue for many dayes because of the inhabitable Wilbernesse that is betwene Syria and Egypt, toke his voyage againe into Egypt.

Whereof hearing Almerick, marcheth against him wth al his power. Both their Armies met in the Wilbernesse, where betwene them was fought a cruell and bloudye conflict, with doubtful fortune on either party. But in the end, Syracon fledde and with the remnaunt of his Host, came to Alexandria, whiche Citie Almerick after longe Siege toke by surrendrie: and Syracon with his company got him to Damasco, & Almerick returned home into his owne Kingdome.

But within a while after, suspecting either that Sanar secretly practized and went about to enter in league with Norandine against him, or els feigninge a matter (or rather picking a quarell) for a desire that he had to wyne that

The thirde Booke

that Realme and Countrey, eftsones invaded Egypt and toke by force the Citie Bilbis, shewing much crueltie with fire and sword to all sortes of people, sparing neither age nor sex. Wherefore Sanar desired ayde of Norandine, & upon promise of great Summes of money, so long staid and repessed the impetuous course of Almerick his victorie, till such time that his ayde came, of whose comming when Almerick had vnderstandinge, he raised his Campe and departed out of Egypt. Wherefore Syracon who had the leading and conduct of Norandines men finding Egypt without any foraine ayde or succour marched straight to Cayr the chiefe & royal Citie of the whole realme, and slew Sanar comming out to parle and confer with him. And when he had got the possession of the Citie he went to do his dutie and exhibit honour to the Caliph, of whom hee was created Admirall of the Lande, which dignitie he enioyed a yere and then died: leauinge behinde him for his Successoure Saladine his Brother Sonne, a man of a surpassing and polytique wit, stoute, valyaunt, and of nature most franck and lyberall. Who immediatlie murdered the Caliph with all his blouds and progenie, to the intent he might alone haue both the Authorities and riches. Thus was that most wealthy Kingdome brought vnder the obedience of the Turkes in the yere of our Lorde. 1150.

Afterward Saladine (as he was a man verie prudent and wise perceiuing how tenderlie and effeminatly the Egyptians liued, insomuch that when any invasion of foraine hostilitie approached or were like to grow, & kings were euer glad and faine to craue foraigne ayde to support and helpe them, determined with himselfe to institute some kinde or order of warfare and to traine vp a troupe of such souldiours as should be habile at all bounts and assaies to be as a rampire, or stronge Bulwarke to the

Egypt when it first came into the possession of the Turkes.

Of the Saracen Historie. 116

the whole kingdome. Perceiuing therfore that the people bred and bozne in the Southzen quarters were both a softer and also stouter for the warres then the Southerne bozne were, entred into League with certayne people inhabiting about Maxotis and Pontus, called Circassians (of Plinie and olde writers, Zigians) and bartered with them for an entercourse of Merchandize betwene them & him, namely that they should serue him of Boyes and young Striplinges at a certaine price. Who beyng brought into Egypt and from their youth trayned by in feates of chieualrie and warlyke discipline, should do nothing but handsomely practise the handling of their weapons and artillery, & when time required serue in warres and should haue the ordering of all honours and dignities bellicall. For the Zigians are a people of nature verie fierce, accustomed euen from the Cradle to abide all manner of labour, hardnes and trauell, inhabiting that parte of Pontus and Meotis which is about the riuer Phasis which riuer is the bounder and meere of Colchis, and the mouth of Tanais, which Countrey or region containeth welnere 500. myles.

These people dwell not in Cities and Townes, but wander and are disperced here and there without any certayne habitation from Village to Village. Chistians they are by their profession and religion, albeit they vse many rites vnyke vnto ours: their Infants as soone as they are bozne (yea though it be in the middest of winter) they cary vnto a riuer and there washe them. They are for the moste part faire of complexion and of comely stature, the countrey is fenny and full of reedes, whereof they doo make Houelles and Cotages to dwell in, they be at continuall warres with the Tartarians and other Nations aboute them.

The Nobles and Gentlemen amonge them neuer goe but in Armour and Coates of Fence, and alwayes ryde

These people were also called Mamalukes.

It is

on

The thirde Booke

Lieutenant and chiefe Captaine vnder the Emperour of Tartarians hym ouercame and tooke Prisoner in the yeere of our Lorde God. 1258. and caused Mustacene Munibila (who at that tyme had that office and dignitie, among the buyge and inestimable heapes of treasure and ryches which he had hooded by and miserably scraped together) to bee sampled. After this, almost for 200. yeeres (pace the Saracenes had no high Byshoppe, till at length in Persia the lynage and offspringe of Mahomet beganne againe to raygne in the yeere. 1480. whiche how and by what sort it came to passe, resteth here to be shewed and described.

There was a certayne Prince among the Persians, Lorde of a Towne called Ardenel, and his name was Sophi who greatly gloried, and boze himselfe very loftie and high for that he was as he saide descended of the race and Pedagretwe of Ali the Sonne in lawe of Mahomet by Musa Cazinc his Nephewe, of whom we spake in the first Booke. This selowe now seeyng the Babylonian Caliphe to bee slayne, and the contrarie faction which the Turkes mainteyned and kept to bee depressed and triumphed ouer by the Tartarians, beganne frankly and boldly to utter his mynde and oppynion concernyng Religion. And because Hoceme the Sonne of Ali from whom he made his auant to bee lineally descended, had xij. Sonnes, therefore he willing to geue some difference and token wherby his Sectaries might be discerned and knowen from all others, commaunded and ordeyned that so many as woulde embrace and folowe his Loze and Doctrine shoulde weare a purple Rybon or Labell hanging downe from theyr weathred Weyle which all Turkes weare aswell as they vpon their heades, called Tulibante, and the same in the middle to bee reysed by into, xij. toppes or heigthes wythoute the Tulibante.

After

Of the Saracen Historie. 118

After he was deade, his sonne Guines succeeded in his roume, who for learning and sanctitie gotte such estimation and fame throughout the whole Orient, that the most mightie Emperoure of the Parthians, named Tamburlane (euen he which tooke Barazete the King of Turkes Prisoner) leading his Army & passing through Persia, dayned to tourne out of his way and to visite as a man of most holy life and vnspotted sanctitie. At the request of which Guines, the same Tamburlane freely deliuered out of his captiuitie. xxx. M. Prisoners which he had taken in his Warres and as then had with him in his Campe: whom afterward Guines instructed and trained by in his Sect and discipline, whose seruice and helpe Secaidar his Sonne in his warres afterward vled. For he after the death of his father Guines, reposing his speciall trust & chiefe strength in them, warred vpon the Georgians a people of Scythia beyng Christians bordering vpon his Countreyes, and by their help afflicted and put them to many foyles, ouerthrowes, and distresses.

There raygned in Persia a certayne Turke named Mirza Geunda, who warred wyth Hacembecke (whom some doe call Assambey) King of the greater Armenia which is of them called Diarbeck, beyng also a Turke aswell as hee: in whiche Warres Hacembecke gotte the vpperhande, and slewe his enemye Mirza in Battayle, and hauyng wonne Persia, because hee was but of a base stocke and obscure familie and wythout kinsmen and Allies, hee meant to make and establishe the state of his Kingdome the surer by linking in affynlie with some puyssaunt house and thereupon gaue his daughter whiche he begat vpon his wife the Emperour of Trapezunte his daughter (who was a Christian) in marriage vnto Secaidar. After the deathe of Hacembecke, succeeded Iacob Beg, whiche woode signifyeth a Lorde.

This

Beg in the
Turkish
language
signifieth a
Lorde.

The thirde Booke

This Iacob fearinge the great power of his Brother in lawe Secaidar (partlye gotten by his new Sect, and partlye by his Warres with the Georgians) pruely sent ayd to his Enemies, and caused him to be slaine. But his two sonnes Ismahel and Solyman, he committed in charge to one of his famylper and assured Freendes to carye and conueyghe a farrre of, vnto Mansor Deporna, Constable of the Citie of Siracia: willing and streightlie charging him to keepe them in sure warde and custodie within the strong Castell of Zalgah, which standeth vpon a high and inaccessible Rock, till such time as by expresse certificate he should otherwise countremaunde him. But Mansor taking remozse and pitie on them, for the honoz of Ali (of whose auncient bloud they were deriued) kepte them like Princes and vsed them most honourable, causing them to be trained vp and instructed in learninge with his owne Childzen.

An example
of pitie to-
ward them
that were fa-
therlesse.

And after certaine yeres, falling into a greuous sicknesse and maladie, insomuch that he saw himselfe not like any longer to liue, and fearing least his Sonne Caceine beinge a younge man, woulde after the death of him, deliuer these young Orphans and fatherlesse Childzen to Rocene (which raigned after his Father Iacob) furnished them with money, Horse and Guides needfull for their iourney, and sent them home againe to their Mother and Kinsfolkes.

These Orphans being enformed of their state and noble byrth, and by what meanes they had bene preserved (which thing befoze that present thei knew nothinge of) their Kinsmen, Adherents and sauozers, for their fathers sake flocking in from euery part vnto them. Ismael the elder of the twaine, whose wit was both more pregnant and deeper then his Brothers, (drawne therto by desiring a naturall zeale) openlie befoze his friends protested that he would neuer rest, till he had reuenged the murder and death

Of the Saracen Historie. 119

death of his father, and after he had made certaine roades into the Marches and Prerinctes of the Georgians (his power also daylie encreasing) he named himselfe Protector of Ali his doctrine and defendour of all his authorities, and therewithall denounced open Warre vpon Rocene King of Persia and all his pertakers. And because he had six Brothers, which contended with him for the succession of the Crowne, he slew him and al the rest, sauing only Marabeck.

This Marabeck fledde to Solyman Prince of Turks, and requested his ayde, wherupon ensued much trouble and great Warres betwene the Othomannians and Sophians. But befoze he had obtained any ayde of the Turkes to succour him, Ismael had wonne not onely al Persia, but also atchieued and won many notable victories of the Tartarians. And thus the Saracenes expulsiue the Turkes, began agayne to raigne in Persia, in the yere after the natiuitie of our Saviour Chyiste 1500. and there do raigne tyll this day.

The Kinges
of Persia be
right sara-
cenes.

And the Turkes with all their powers together hauing conquered all the Romane Prouinces in Asia as farre as the Sea, distributed and cast lottes for the same among themselves, in which distribution and Lotterie, the maigne countrey of Phrygia as far as Philadelphia, and nere to Antioch (situate vpon the riuer Meander) fell vnto Carman Alifure, whereof the Countrey was afterwarde named Caramania. All from thence to Smyrna and the inner Coast of Ionia, happened vnto one Saracane.

Magnesia, Priene and Ephesus were allotted vnto Sasan. From Lydia and Etolia to Mysia situate by Hellespont, Calames and his Sonne Cerasus enjoyed. From the riuer Sangar to Paphlagonia, the Sonnes of Armurius parted among them. All within Olympus and the whole Countrey of Bythinia, fell vnto Atman, other

lik

wife

The thirde Booke

wise named Othoman, (of whose race the Emperours of Turkes which ever since and now at this day raighe in Turke are lineally descended) in the yere of our saluacion 1300. Albert the firste of that name, descended of the house of Austrich being then Cæsar and Emperour of Germanie. And from this Othoman,

Laonicus Chalcondyla an Athenian, Pau-

lus Iquius and other both Greeke and

Latine Turcographers do beginne

their histories: wherfore to auoyd

tediousnes, least after Homere,

wee shoulde seeme to write

an other Ilias, here we

make an ende.

FINIS.

His book is a translation of Curio

A

A Summarie or breefe, Chronicle of Saracens and Turkes,

continued from the birthe of Ma-

homet, their first pæmish Prophet and

Founder, till this present yeere.

1575



Mahomet the Sonne of Abedela and Emma, of the ligne of Ismael, was borne at Ictaripe in Arabia, in the time that Maurice was Emperoure and Gregory the first, Pope of Rome.

Mahomet patched together his Alcorane, (a Booke containing his pestilent doctrine & grosse opinions) through instruction and procurement of two hereticall monks, Iohn of Antioch and Sergius of Italy. And therewith seducing the light brayned Arabians and other fickle minded people of Asia, called them Saracens.

At the age of xl. yeres he dyed, and was buried in Mecha a Citie of Persia.

Hierusalem after it had bene besieged by the Saracens the full space of two yeres, was taken and spoyled.

All Syria ouerrunne and wasted by the Saracenes.

The Saracenes revolted from the Emperoure of Romanes.

Antioch destroyed by Saracenes, Damascus taken, Phænicia inuaded, and Egypt subdued.

The Saracenes wanne the greatest part of Africa and layed it to their Emprye.

The moste Noble Ile of Rhodes inuaded by the Saracenes and taken: out of whiche they caried awaye with them great abundance of Golde, and a Noble Image of the Sunne, called a Colosse, whiche

It is

was

*Do Saraceny
Chron.
tion, woly:
and Drach:
Hoy.*

*Jamesonum
Ryua.*

*Curio 1075
Hic is pæmish
retriged hanc
Hanc.*

*567. Hic dabo
et Drachlor 4
596. Hic dabo*

623.

637.

638.

639.

640.

641.

648.

655.

A briefe Chronicle

was in height. 110. foote. The Masse therof being solde to the Iewes, was as much as 900 Camelles coulde carge away.

656. They practyzed outrageous Pyracie on y^e Aegean Sea, and did much harme to the Isles called Cyclades.

663. The Saracens discomfited Olympius the Exarch of Italy with all his Host in Sicilie.

668. Constantine the fourth, entred into league with Muchamed King of Saracens vpon condition that the Saracens shoulde pay a great Summe of Gold to the Romanes, with a goodly Horse and a Childe of noble byrth.

672. The Saracens rushed into Sicilie, and after they had taken Syracuse and wasted the whole Countrey, they returned backe to Alexandria.

675. Constantinople was besieged by the Saracens, vnto which, they gaue sundry assaultes but all in vaine: wherefore they shipped themselves intending to haue returned home, but the greater part of them through Shipwacke perished by the way.

676. The Romanes ouercame the Saracens, and slew of them 30000.

679. Peace the second time was made betwene y^e Romanes and the Saracens for xxx. yeeres, vpon condition, that the Saracens shoulde pay yeerely to the Romanes 3000. ll. of Gold, 50. noble Prisoners and as many Horses.

686. The Saracens in the reigne of their King Ammirath, inuaded Africa and Lybia, & carped away many spoiles.

687. After the death of Constantine, the Emperour Iustinian entred into league with the Saracens vpon these conditions, that they shoulde restore vnto the Emperre, Africa and Lybia, and pay euery day for the space of ten yeeres, a thousande Crownes, a Horse, and a Childe of noble byrth, in the name of a Tribute.

688. Iustinian breaking this League, and loyning battayle with the Saracens, receyued at theyr handes much harme and

Of Saracens and Turkes. 121

and great ouerthrowes.

The Saracens putting the Romanes to flight, greatly enhaunced their name and authoritie: contrariwise, the dignitie of the Romanes therby greatly decayed.

Abimelech King of Saracens, inuading Africa, enioyed not his victoery there long.

The Romans spoyling Syria, discomfited 200000. Saracenes.

While Iustinian and Leontius were striding for the Empire, the Saracens againe inuaded Africa.

The Saracens sayling out of Lybia, this yeere set first foote into Spaine, waisting Aragon, Betica and Lusitanie.

The Saracens of Asia, landed at Constantinople with 300. Saile, and fiercely besieged the same both by Sea and lande. The same yeere in Bulgaria there were slaine 22000. Saracens.

Zulcemō King of Saracens, dyed in his Camp before Constantinople, in whose place succeeded Amirath.

During this Siege of Constantinople, many of y^e Saracens dyed of samyne, plague and colde. They that remained alvye meaning to resourne home, by tempest on the Sea and Lightning, perished, being partly consumed by fire and partly drowned in the waters: insomuch that of their whole flete which was 3000. Shippes moze and lesse, there escaped but only five. This Siege lasted fully two yeeres. The same yeere the Saracens thinking to recouer some of theyr former losses, wyth a buyge Army entred into Spayne, and spoyled all the Countrey sauing onely Gallicia.

Abidimar Capitaine of the Saracens in Africa, sacked and spoyled Burdeaux a Citie of Fraunce, and removing thence to Poytiers, was mette withall and repelled by Charles Martellus. Their Capitaine and Prince Abidimar being slaine, the Saracens for a while were quiet and medled not with any moe warres.

kk.iiij.

The

A breefe Chronicle.

- 730 The Saracenes bringyng wyth them theyr wyues, Children and whole Householde, entred a frefhe into Fraunce, as thonghe they had meant there continualye to haue dwelled, and planted themselves for euer. Wyth them, Charles the Great ioynd Battayle, hauyng the ayde of the Frenche Nation, and slew of them. 380000. and losse of his owne men onely 1500 Souldiours.
- 735 Charles King of Fraunce, by his valiaunt knyght-hood deliuered out of the handes of the Saracens, the noble Citie of Auinion, whyche they had besoge guilefully surprized.
- 737 Charles restored many other Cityes to peace and libertie, expulsiug out the Saracens: slaying Amorrhous one of their Captaines, & putting Achine another of their Wyues to flight.
- 738 The same Charles by helpe of Luitprand Kinge of Lumbardie, drave and expelled all the Saracens out of Fraunce.
- 744 Constantinus Copronymus Emperour of Constantinople furnished out a flauie against the Saracenes in Egypt.
- 759 The Saracens in the East were euer wyynning some what that belonged to the Romans and layed it to theyr owne Emprye, by meanes that the Romanes disagreed among themselves, and bent themselves only against the French Kings.
- 778 Charles the Great, had a noble victorie agaynst the Saracenes in Spaine. Rowlande in combate ouercame a Saracen that often chalenged the Chyistians. Whough which Victorie and vpperhande, he made the waye the easer for the rest of his frendes and Countrey men to wyne the victorie.
- 780 Leo the fourthe Emperour made a voyage against the Saracens in Syria.

Aaron

Of Saracens and Turkes. 122

- Aaron Prince of Saracens wyth 300000 lyght Horsemen inuaded Nicephorus Emperour of Constantino-ple, and made hym glad to become Tributary, and to accepte such offers as greatly myghted and diseased hym, but there was no remedy.
- Sardinia and Corsica two Ilandes, were spoiled by the Saracens.
- The Saracens wanne the Ile of Crete, and ouercame the Grekes in two Battayles.
- The Saracens of Asia rushed into Palestina, and they of Africa into Sicilie.
- Boniface Countee of Corsica, hauing no helpe of the Chyistians sayng onely the Petrurians, sayled into Africa: and in foure Battayles, betweene Carthage and Vtica, had of them the Victorie and vpperhand, and so feared the Saracenes wyth the terrour of his only name, that they were faine to depart out of Sicilie, and get them home to defend theyr owne.
- Many Countreyes receyued greate damage at the handes of the Saracenes, and manye Cyties for feare, in euery quarter fledde and submitted themselves vnto them.
- Saba Kinge of Moors and Capitayne of the Saracenes wasted Sicilie and all the Countrey about Crotona, and tooke Tarento: agaynst whom, Theophilus the Emperour and the Venetian flete stode at resist: Staunce, but all in vaine.
- The Saracenes inuadyng Hetruria and Latium, spoiled and sacked Rome: but besoge theyr retourne home, the greatest parte of them perished by Shypwrecke.
- Hauyng wasted Illyrium and Dalmatia, they coasted alonge the Adrian Sea, and burned Ancona a Citie of picens, after they had taken the spoyle thereof.

Leo

A breefe Chronycle

847. Leo the fourth, Pope of Rome, compelled the residue of the Saracens to packe oute of the Haven of Ostia, and strengthened all the Countrey beyonde Tyber againste them.
867. The Saracens agayne (onely for bootie and spoyle) brake into Italic, and wasted with fire and sword all the Countrey aboute Beneuent by the Samnytes. But by King Ludouick and Kinge Lotharius they were put to flight.
870. The Saracens renewed Warres with the Persians: The Persians thzough the help of the Turkish Souldyours (at that time the Turkes inhabited Mount Caucasus and were called Tartarians) overcame them. Euer after from that time, the Turkes neuer left Asia, and not onely encroched vpon the Domynions of the Saracens, but also were called by the same name as they were.
878. After the Saracenes had enioyed Sicilie xlvij. yeres, they were thence cleane expelled.
881. Charles surnamed the Whicke, repulsed the Saracens breaking into Italy.
891. Nicetes one of the Capitaines of the Constantinopolitane Emperoure, had a notable victorie ouer the Saracens.
910. The Saracens invaded Puell and Calabria.
913. At Lyris a riuer of Campania, the Saracens as they were spoylinge the Cities belonging to the Romans, were ouercome.
914. The Saracens breaking out of Fraxinete, came as far as Aquisgrane where encounteringe with the Inhabytantes, they were utterly destroyed and Sagitus theyr Capitaine slayne.
935. The Saracens spoiled Geane a Citie of Liguria, and with great booties retourned into Afryca.
941. Hugh King of Italic wanne Fraxinete, and burned the Hauie of the Saracens.

Ramyre

of Saracens and Turkes. 123.

- Ramyre King of Gallyce, discomfited a great Armye of Saracenes in Spayne. 944.
- The Saracenes committing many murthers and firings in Calabria, Puell and Lucania, by the brighte promise of Alberick Marquesse of Hetruria were repressed, and nere to Minturne in Campania by the Kyuer Lyris vanquished. There intentes were to haue come to Rome. 951.
- The Saracenes by force keeping the Mount Garganus made out of it many Roades into the Countrey nere adioyninge, and burned Beneuent. 952.
- Otho the first, Emperour of Germanes, drave the Saracenes out of Italic, and dispossessed them cleane out of their holde in Mount Garganus. 969.
- The Saracenes recovered Consentia, out of the which a litle before they were thzowen out by the Hungarians. 970.
- The Ile of Crete taken from the Saracenes. 977.
- Otho the seconde, receiued a great ouerthrowe of the handes of the Saracenes, in a battayle fought with them in Calabria the Ides of Iulie, with whom the Greekes had stricken a League and ioyned poluers. His stoutest souldiours and Capitaines being in this conflict slaine, he himselfe had much a do by flight to saue himselfe. 982.
- Alphonfus King of Spaine, besieging a stronge holde of the Saracens called Viscum, was wounded with an Arrowe and therof dyed. 1000.
- The Saracens deuidinge their host into two partes, landed in Italic, toke Capua and besieged Barum. 1007.
- The Saracenes of Asia toke Hierusalem. 1009.
- Henry the second Emperour of Germanes, drave the Saracens out of Capua, and persecuted with greuous warre certayne Capitaines which fauored their side. 1013.
- The Egyptian Caliph, thzough the ayde of an army of Saracens and Turkes (which then ruled all the coast in Persia) spoiled the Temple of our Lord at Hierusalem. 1028.
- Al. This

A breefe Chronycle

- 1119 Baldwyne after .xviij. monthes Impzisonment, decey-
ued his keepers and escaping out of Pzison, retourned to
his owne people.
- 1122 Dominicus Michael Duke of Venice with a well fur-
nished Paule, greatly annoyed the Saracenes in Syria.
To the Venecians for their worthy service and valiaunt-
nes were graunted sundry great Pziuilleges.
- 1125 An Army of 40000 men set vpon the Chzistians and
were encountred withall by 3000 Chzistians: who tho-
row the goodnes of God, slew of their Enemies with the
swoorde 7000, and 5000 drowned, so that the victoꝛye fell
to the Chzistians.
- 1127 In Syria the Chzistians discomfited the Saracens in
two notable ouerthzowes: in the first conflict 2500 of them
were slaine. In the other, although both Armies were af-
flicted, yet the Chzistians obtained the victoꝛye.
- 1129 The king of Ascalon was by Baldwine repressed,
and the king of Damascus in thze battailes overcome.
- 1130 After the death of Baldwine the third king of Hierusa-
lem, Fulco was made the fourth king.
- 1131 The Cite of Tripolis by treason was slaine, king Ful-
co was put to flight by his Enemies and condescended to
very hard conditions, to be clearely deliuered from siege.
- 1133 The Chzistians coaped in fight with the Egyptians and
were superiours.
- 1139 Ascalon was recovered by the Chzistians.
- 1142 Fulco the fourth king of Hierusalē in hunting a Hare
and ryding fast after the game, thzough a fall from his
hoꝛse dyed: after whom succeeded his Sonne Baldwine
who was the fift king.
- 1143 The Cite Edessa and almost all Mesopotamia was
wonne by the Saracens & Alaph Captaine of the Turks,
which now were of great name and power in the East:
where they kyled without all mercy a wonderfull num-
ber of Chzistians, rauishing many wiues in the Church of
Saint

Of Saracens and Turkes. 125

Saint John Baptiste, & in despyght of Chzistianitie euen
vpon the Alter.

Baldwine the thirde of that name, and the fiste king of
Hierusalem, conquered Gaza and Ascalon and cast out al
the Saracens. And at Hierico he overcame and put to
flight Norandine Maister of the Chivalry of Damascus
and slue 5000 of his enemyes.

Manuel Emperour of Constantinople with muche
ouersight and negligence led thzough daungerous wayes
and desert places his Chzistian Hostes against the Sara-
cens, insomuch that for scarcitie of vittayles and other ne-
cessaries, they could atchiue no notable enterpze against
the myscreaunt people.

Roger King of Sicilie and Normannes, made the Afri-
cane Saracens tributarie to him for .xxx. yeres, and toke
their king Pzisoner.

This yere Conrade the second, Emperour, leuyed a
great power against the Saracens, against whom he had
in battaile but ill successe.

Lewys King of Fraunce, assembled a mightie Armie to
go against the Infideles.

Out of England, Flaunders and Lozaine were furni-
shed out 200 saile against the Saracens.

This yere Conrade the Emperour passing ouer Bos-
phorus without anye resistaunce, came nere to his ene-
mies: but for want of vittuals and (as some say) his corne
being corrupted and mingled with lyme and plaister, he
was glad to stay himselfe and go no further and to bring
backe his Armye. The Saracens vnderstanding hereof,
set vpon them behind and slue of them certain thousandes.

The same yere the French king came to the Empe-
rour to aide him: but by reason that his Armye was great-
ly distressed and pinched with famine, he could bring no
notable atchieuante to passe. The same time, the Vene-
tians with a well furnished Paule went into Asia, to aide
the

A breefe Chronycle

- the Emperour against the Saracens.
- 1148 The Spanyardes expulſing the Saracens, recovered Almaria and Tortoſa, two goodly embattailed Cities.
- The ſame yeere, Damafcus was beſieged by the Syrians, Frenchmen, and Hieroſolymitanes, and the Walmures thereof defaced. And when they were euen at the poynt to haue wonne the Citie and ſubdued the Saracenes, the chiefe Princes and Capitaines diſagreyng and falling out amonge themſelues, called theyr owne ſouldiours euery man together, and departed thence, leauing the ſiege.
- 1149 Raymund King of Antioch with hys whole Hoſt was diſcomfited by the Saracens, who ſpoyled all hys Countrey. Antioch it ſelfe by the Kinge of Hieruſalem was hardly reſcued and ſaued.
- 1151 Baldwin King of Hieruſalem, diſcomfited the Egypci-
ans and Babilonians.
- 1158 The Saracenes drave the Spanyardes by force of Armes out of Almaria.
- 1159 Baldwin ſet at libertie and reſtozed many Cities, expulſing thence the Saracens.
- 1164 Baldwin dyed; and in his ſteede reigned hys brother Almericke, the ſixt king of Hieruſalem.
- 1170 Almericke in Egypt obtained a noble victorie.
- 1171 The ſame king beſieged Damiata: but in the ende he agreed to a peace: vpon conditions neither honorable nor profitable.
- 1172 The Saracenes of Africa made manie Roades into Spaine.
- 1175 Almericke King of Hieruſalem dyed of an Ague: And his ſonne Baldwin was annoynted the ſeuenth king.
- 1177 Baldwin in two battailes vanquiſhed Saladine King of Egypt, and brought much treaſure into Hieruſalem.
- 1180 The Daughter of the king of Saracens being married to Prince Pagane, was taken priſoner on the ſea, by the King

Of Saracens and Turkes. 126

King of Sicilie, in hir voyage and Iourney homewarde to hir huſband.

This yeere, the Chriſtians in Hieruſalem were overcome.

Mauſamunch king of the Saracens with great coſtes and charges repayzed Carthage.

Baldwine the viij. king of Hieruſalem, beyng infected with Leproſie dyed. His nephew Baldwin, his ſifters ſonne was elected king after him, but by frowning deſertines he was kepte backe from his dignitie. After whom ſucceeded the viij. king Guye of Leſingham.

Betweene this Guye kyng of Hieruſalem and Raymund Earle of Tripolis, there aroſe diſſenſion and batturging whiche was the cauſe, that the Chriſtians were brought into extreme daunger.

The Chriſtians loyning battayle with the Arme of Saladine, had a lamentable overthrow. In this battayle were ſlaine 20,000. Chriſtians. King Guye was taken priſoner, and the Earle of Tripolis, dyed ſodainly.

Hieruſalem hauing now bene enioyed and poſſeſſed by the Chriſtians. Irrubly. was this yeere by ſurrendre deliuered vp to the king of Saracens, and y Chriſtians there expelled, the ſecond day of October.

This yeere all Iurie was wonne from the Chriſtians by the Saracens: the Cities of Tyre, Tripolis and Antioche being with much a doe and hardly kept.

Fridericke Emperour of Romans with his ſonne Fridericke, Philip king of Fraunce, Richard king of England with manie other Princes and Nobles, aſſembling their Parliametes, decreed & thoroughly determyned to ayde the Chriſtians in Iurie. Great preparation was made for this voyage. Fridericke leaueing hys Armie in to Syria, and wyning the leſſe Armenia, went in the boate time of Sommer, into the River Selephus to bathe & waſhe himſelfe, where by miſfortune he was drowned.

The

A breefe Chronycle

1248. **Lewes** Kinge of Fraunce, went with an Armye toward the holy Land, with entent, to supplant the Saracenes and relieue the Christians.
1249. The sayd King Lewes, ioyning battayle with the Saracenes, brought vnder his subiection Damietta a populous citie and curiously embattelied.
1250. The same King Lewes, in a terrible conflict at Faramia was taken prisoner by the Saracens, with his two brethren Charles and Alphonse. Whereupon Damietta was redeliuered into the hands of the Saracens, whereby he saued his owne lyfe and his freendes, and was deliuered out of Prison. This kinge was taken the fiftte day of Aprill.
1252. The Saracens lost the Ile called Baleares, which the Duke of Aragon subdued.
1261. The kinges of Spaine fallynge at variaunce and discord, the one brother fled into Fraunce to craue ayde, the other into Africa to desire assistance of the Saracens against his owne brother, whereby they wrought much scath both to themselves and to their countrey.
1262. Deadly hatred and grudge fell betwene the Venetians and the Genoways, whereby the Christians inhabiting Ptolomais and Tyre were greuously afflicted.
1265. The Saracens dzaue the Christians cleane out of Siria.
1268. Antioch was sacked by Bodegar the Sultane.
1270. Yet againe, Lewes the french kinge with his three Sonnes sayled into Africa against the Saracens with a great power. Where by his knightly prowesse he had the victorie of them and besieged Carthage: but by reason of the vnhollome countrey and chaunge of ayre, the pestilence infected his Host, wherof the king himself dyed, and his sonne Iohn also, and then brake vp the siege.
1281. The Armenians and Scythians at Gamala a citie of Iurie were destroyed by the Saracens, with the citie also.
1289. The citie Tripolis was taken & fiered by the Sultane of Egypt, and the Christians in most cruell wyse slayne, or els caried away captiue. The

Of Saracens and Turkes. 128

The cities of Tyre, Sydon, Tripolis and Bericus, by the same Sultane, were fiered & rased euen with the ground. Ptolomais also being also a place of refuge for the dispersed Christians, was taken without any resistance and destroyed, and the very foundations digged vp. The Christians which fled away and sought the citie, in their way toward Crete perished by shipwreck and were drowned. And thus were the Christians utterly chased out of Syria 190 yeeres after they won it vnder Godfrey of Bolleine.

The kingdome of Turkes.

- Othoman a man of obscure birth & very ambitious, growing in great wealth & riches by spoyle and robbery, was the first that tooke vpon him, the name of Kinge of Turkes. He within 1. yeeres space subdued to his seignioye a great part of Bythinia & other countreis about the Euxine Sea, whose generation since, hath wrought much mischief to Christendome.
- The Ile of Rhodes was won fro the Sar. by the hospitallers.
- Alphonse King of Castile in a notable conflict ouercame the Saracens, and tooke two mighty cities.
- Othoman king of Turkes dyed and after him succeeded Orchanes his Sonne, the second king of that Nation.
- While Cantacuzen & Paleologus contended for the Empire of Constantinople, Orchanes by force won the most noble citie of Prusia.
- Orchanes in a battayle against the Tartarians (for so are the Scythians called) lost the field and was with many of his army slaine. After him succeeded Amurathes the third kinge of Turkes.
- Amurathes through the conetousnes and treason of the Genowais (lending their ships vnto him) passed the streits of Hellespont to Abydus, where he conquered the cities of Philippople and Hadrianople vnto his subiection.
- This

A brieue Chronicle

1373. This Ammurathes inuaded Seruia and Bulgaria, conquered them from the Chzistians, and at the same tyme toke and slue Lazarus King of Seruia.
1373. Ammurathes inuading the higher Mysia, was thrust into the flanke with a Dagger, by one that was a faithful seruaunt to the aboue named King Lazarus, (whose presence was to reuenge his maisters death) of the whiche wound he dyed. After Ammurathes thus slaine, Baiazeth his sonne, obteyned the kingdome, & was the fourth king of Turkes, and slue his owne brother.
1374. Marke Cratenique king of Bulgaria, with all the nobilitie of his realme, was vanquished in battayle by Baiazeth.
1376. He spoyled Bosna Croacia, Illyria, Albania and VValachia, kyllyng many thousandes of Chzistians, being partly slaine and partly caried into captiuitie.
1389. Constantinople was afflicted and besieged fully. viij. yeres by this vnnmercifull Tyrant the Turkish king.
1390. The Lordes of England and Fraunce at the instance of the Genowayes ioyning with them, made a voyage into Africa against the Saracenes and compelled them to redde and set at liberty the Chzistian Prisoners liuing among them, and to pay 10000 Crownes.
1392. The Malachians craued ayde of the Turkes against the Hungarians, whom (notwithstanding) the Hungarians vanquished and put to flight.
1396. The Chzistians and the Turks mette and ioyned battayle at Nicopolis, vpon the .28. day of September. But the victorie fell to Baiazeth who had there 300000. stoute fighting men well appoynted, wherof 60000 were horsemen. The Army of the Chzistians (being French & Hungarians) was not about .lxx. thousande, among whom there were about .xx. M. Horsemen. The French Capitaines were in a maner all taken Prisoners. Sigismund the king of Hungarie himselfe escaped hardly by flight.

Of Saracens and Turkes. 129

In this battaile were slaine of Chzistians 20000. and of Turkes 60000. This lamentable ouerthrowe happened throughte the discorde of the Chzistian Host among themselves, by reason that one whyle the Frenche and another while the Hungarians claimed the first onset and the leading of the Mauntgard. After this battaile the Turke retyzed backe to the siege of Constantinople.

Tamburlane King of Scythia, a man of obscure byrthe and Bedagrew, grew to such power, that he mayntained in his Court daily attending on him, a thousand and CC. Horsemen. This Prince inuadyng the Turkes dominions in Asia with an innumerable multitude of armed Souldiours, in the confynes of Gallitia and Bichynia, nere to Mount Stella, gaue to the Turke a soze battaile, in the which, he slew of them two hundred thousand. He tooke Baiazeth the Great Turke Prisoner, and keppe hym in a Cage, tyed and bounde wyth golden Chaynes. When so euer hee tooke Horse, he caused the sayde Baiazeth to be brought out of hys Cage, & used his necke as a styrope: and in this sozte caried hym throughtout all Asia in mockage and derysion. He vanquished the Persians, ouercame the Medians, subdued the Armenians, and spoiled all Egypt. He built a Citie and called it Marchantum, wherein he kept all his Prisoners, and enriched the same with the spoyle of all such Cities as he conquered. It is reported in Histories, that in his host he had an incredible nuber of thousande, he used comonly to haue xij. hundred thousand vnder him in Campe. When he came in sight of his enemies, his custome was to set vp three soztes of Banplions or Tentis: the first, was white, signifying that by to his Chemyes, that if at that shew, they would yelce, there was hope of grace and mercye at hys handes: the next was redde, whereby he signified bloude and flame: & lastly blacke, which betokened vtter subuersion & mercilesse hauocke of all things for their contempt.

¶ m.ij.

The

A breefe Chronicle.

The same yere Walachia, Transyluania, Moldauia and all the Region beyonde the ryuer of Danowe, by procurement of Stephan Vaiuoda their Captaine, sediciously mutyned and stirred vp202es, against Sigismund. Whereby all men might perceiue and vnderstande, that the same Vaiuoda was the very Authour of the late discomforture, in p20caring the Turkes to come thither.

1398 Cyriscelebes (whom some do call Calepine) after y the Great Turke his father was take prisoner and his Host vanquished by Tamburlane the Scythian King, saued himself by flight, & toke vpon him to be king of Turkes, being the syt from Ochoman.

1399 The Turkes (after their king was thus taken & their power daunted) atchieued nothing wo2thy of any remembrance vnder this Cyriscelebes.

1404 Cyriscelebes the kinge, this yere dyed, leauing behind him two Sonnes, Orcannes and Mahomet.

1404 Orcannes throughte the great fauour of the Nobles of Thracia, was appointed Successour to the Crowne, being yet a very young man: but in a conflict at Gazar, not farre from the ryuer Hebrus he was slaine chiefly by the villanie of his owne vnde Moses.

1405 Mahomet the sixte King of Turkes, when his brother was thus rybde out of the way, enjoyed the Crowne alone.

1408 This Mahomet subdued Seruia, Walachia, and a great part of Sclauonic.

1411 Sigismund king of Hungarie, in a battaile against the Turkes foughten in the fieldes of Salumbeze (whych were somtimes called Philadelphia) was put to y worse, and fledde.

1412 Mahomet imposed greuous and intollerable tributes vpon the Walachians. He translated the Seate royall of chiefe Citie of his Empire out of Bythinia into Thracia, and gaue prerogatiue to Adrianople, preferring it before

Of Saracens and Turkes. 130

so2e Prusia. He was the first king of that race that passed the ryuer of Danowe, he subdued Macedonic, and came as farre as the Ionian Sea.

1419 Ammurathes the seuenth King of Turkes, vanquishing Mustapha y sonne of Baiazeth by force of Armes, obtained his fathers kingdome.

1420 This Turke made his first voyage against George the king of Seruia, other wyse called Rascia, from whom after foure yeres siege hee wanne Newmound and Scopia, and myserably afflicted Synderouia. The kinges y. sonnes whom he toke in battaile, he bereft of their eyes and cutte of their priuie members. But he married and toke to wife his daughter for her rare beautie and comely personage.

1438 Thessalonica a famous Citie belonging to the Seigniozie of Venice was won by the Turkes, who left there no kinde of villanie and spightfull dealing agaynst the Christians vn2ad2yzed.

1438 Amurathes besieging Belgrade in Hungarie, losse 10000 of his men and was faine to retyze into his owne Countrey after he had in vayne and to his great shame, continued his siege vy. monthes.

1439 John Huniades encountred with the Turkes spoyling Hungarie, and them discomfited.

1440 Ladislaus king of Polonic and Hungarie, sending out a power against the Turkes vnder the guydaunce & leading of the same John Huniades had ouer the a noble victorie in the fieldes of H2mus, and v2aue y Turke to such a streit, that he was faine to condescend to a peace.

1444 This peace made with the Turke, (contrary to league and othe) was violated and broken by the vnabused procurement and exhortation of Pope Eugenius, whiche breache to the Christians was verre pernicious and hurtful. For first, y Christians in the Streits of Hellespont lost 117. Gallies. Afterward in a battaile foughten at Varna,

A breefe Chronycle

the feelo, aboue xxx. thousand of them slaine, beside a great number drowned in the Bogges. In that battayle was slayne Iulian Cæsarine a Cardinal & Legat for the pope, who came thither to procure and incense the Princes to violaction of their League and Oth, and warranted them from daunger: & king Vladislaus himself was ther slaine who was merueilous desirous to enterpryse this War. Huniades with much adoe escaped by flight and saued himselfe. The Turke could not haue brought his Army through the Streites of Bosphorus in Thracia to do this mischief, had not the couetous Genowayes winked at the matter and suffered them, hauing in bribe and rewarde, for euery Turke, a peece of Golde payed vnto them.

1445 Ammurathes wanne the Isthmos of Cozynth, and vanquished the Greckish Garrysons, together with the emperours Brother of Constantinople, and ouercame with pittifull spoyle all Peloponesus.

1446 The Kinge of Polonie encountred with the Turkes as they inuaded Hungary, and obtayned the victorie. The Turkes desirous of reuenge, assembled a bulge power afresh, and renewed Warre. Wherein both parties were lamentably damnyfied, losing welnere 800000 men betwene them. Notwithstanding, the number of y Turkes there slayne, was farre greater then of the Chzistians. But the Generall of the Chzistian Armye was there slayne and his head brought to the Kinge of Turkes. In the same battayle also was slayne the sonne of the sayd King of Turkes.

1448 The Hungarians vnder the leadinge of Huniades to the number of 600000 entred into the Turkes Countries, and ioyning battayle with them, at the firste conflict, they had the victorie: but in the seconde, they were slayne in maner euery one, except 1000. or ther aboute which by flight saued themselves.

The

Of Saracens aud Turkes 131

The great Turke besieged Croia a citie of Emathia, many Monthes, but by the worthy proweesse of Scanderbeg, he was defeated from his purpose, and with losse of many of his men was sent away packing with a Flea in his eare.

Amurathes Emperoure of Turkes dyed, bequeathing his Crowne and kingdome to Mahomet his Son, the 8. King of Turkes. Who (least his Father should be buried alone without company) slew at his first entraunce, his owne Brother, and commaunded them to be buried both in one graue.

The first Warre, that this Mahomet toke in hande, was against Scanderbeg. Besieginge Croia with lxxx. thousand men, but he departed away without his purpose to his great shame and reproche, leaving behinde him at the sayde Siege Ballabano one of his chiefe Bassaes.

The famous and renowned Citie of Athens, the Vniuersitie and Purce of all worthy Artes & Disciplines, was conquered and rased to the ground by this most cruel Tyrant the Turk, who in some places therof digged by the very foundacions, for extreme hatred that he bare to learning. He threwo all the Bookes and Monuments that he could finde, into dyrtie Sinkes and filthiest places in the citie, and to be put to the vilest vles that could be. And if any man seemed to lament it, the same partye was streight wayes put to death. The Castle of Pyruam and Munychia was also most furiously rased to the grounde.

This Tyrant the xxix. day of May, after a continuall assault geuen thereto from the ix. of Aprill afoze, that is to say, 50. continual daies, by his innumerable multytude of Turkes, conquered the noble citie of Constantinople, to the unspeakable hindraunce of all Chzistendome and high advancement of the Turkes Domyinion. At the taking of this citie, most horryble prophaneation of the Temples was vled. As for Imags which the Turkes

And

them

A breefe Chronicle

themselves cannot abyde, in great scozne and contempe were throwne downe. Among others, Mahomet himself laughing at the superstitious Citizens, in great derision gaped and laughed at the Crucifix, and caused it in scozeful maner to be carped about the Streets with Trumpettes, and wzat upon the head of the said Picture these wordes Hic est Christianorum Deus. This is the God of the Christians.

Three dayes together he gave leaue to his outrageous Souldiours, to kill spoyle and rauish both Wyues, Matrons and Maydes without any reuerence of nature. The citizens some they murdered, some they rolled upon Spits, some they stept the skynnes, and afterwarde hanged them vp to consume with samyne, of others they put salt into their woundes the more to encrease theyr payne, contending amonge themselves who could devise most straungest kind of new torment, insomuch that the Citie was no Citie, but rather a Slaughter House or Shambles of Christian bodys. The Emperoure himselfe being there slayn, his head was pitched upon a speare and carped about. At euery dinner and Supper, some of the Emperours Cosens and Nobles of the Countrey were put to death, so longe as anye remayned of that ligne. Of the inferior sort, no day passed wherein he caused not to be put to execution aboue CCC. persons, the residue he gave to his Souldiours.

The exceeding crueltie that they used at the winnynge of this Citie, towards al sort of Men, Women & Children, and their spightfull demeanour towards Christian religion, it would meane any mans hart to heare or read of.

1456

Mahomet besieged Belgrad (of some called Alba Graeca) with a hundred and fiftie thousand men. The Christians assembling their powers together, at the exhortation of John Capistrane, Huniades their chiefe Capitaine and Kingleader slue aboue xl. thousands of his Enemies and

Of Saracens and Turkes 132.

and put to shamfull flight all the reste of them, in whiche encountre Mahomet himselfe was wounded with an Arrowe. This battaile was fought upon the 22. day of Iuly.

This Turke ioyninge battaile wth Aslimbey kinge of Persia, who they call by y^e name of Vfunassane (signifying a worthy & dead prince) in y^e first conflict at Euphrates, lost x. M. men, but in y^e second he obtained the victorie.

Corynth was taken by Mahomet.

The Turke wan from the Christians the Emprye of Trapezunce, beheaving Dauid the Emperour therof and beside the sayd Empire and Constantinople also, he toke from y^e Christians xii. kingdomes & conquered 200. cities.

The Ile of Malta conquered by Turkes.

The Venetians furnished out a great navy well appointed into Grecia, to recover Corynth, but they returned without bzinging their purpose to passe.

The same yere the king of Hungarie recovered Geisa a citie of Bosnia, the which the Turk had now the second time besieged, and hearing of the approche of the Christians, he cast 4. great Gunnes or Cannons into the riuer Drina, & fled trussing better to his legs then to his hands.

Mahomet requiringe the Prince of Mysia to come to speake with him vnder coulozable speeches and pretence of peace, when he had him within his daunger, he sleped and pulled his skinne ouer his eares, and carped his brother and sister about with him in triumph.

The Turke wan a very strong holde in Epyre.

George Castriot (otherwise surnamed Scanderbeg) king of Epyre, discomfited & put to notable foyles y^e Turks in sundry skirmishes. It is testified of this Scanderbeg, y^e being prouoked, he neuer denied to fight, and in fighting neuer tourned his back, neither yet was he euer wounded but once wth an Arrow in the foote, neither did he euer set upon y^e Turks with more then 6000. bozsmen & 3000. footemen. He is constantly said to haue slayne wth his owne handes of Turkes 2000. whome with such violence

¶ In ij

he

1457.

1458.

1460.

1462.

1463.

1494.

1465.

1466.

A breefe Chronicle

he strake, that many of them he clefte a sunder from the head to the middle.

1468 Mahomet discomfited the Syrians and Egyptians, took the Cities of Narrantana & Scandolora and fiered them, killing all the Inhabitantes most rufully, and throwing downe the Nobles and Gentlemen from the toppes of Turrettes and high places to breake their neckes.

The same yere he entred into League with Cissime King of India, to whō he gaue in marriage a noble Damselfell, out of his owne brothelhouse or Parserie, with royal giftes and noble magnificence.

1469 Mahomet was put to many afterdeales by the power of King Vuncassane.

The same yere Nicolas Canalis, Admyrall of the Venetian flete, gaue a mightie ouerthrow to Mahomet on the Sea, and slue two thousand Turkes.

At the same time many Christians were taken and led into captiuitie by the Turkes out of diuerse quarters.

1470 The Turke sent 400 Sayle and 120000 men into the Ile of Euboea vnder the leading of Omar one of his Bassaes, in which enterpryse and inuasion he lost almost 40000 of his men: notwithstanding, after xxx. dayes he took it, pytching the Italian Souldiours vpon Woales & strakes, and shewing all kind of horrible crueltie and violent rape vpon the Inhabitantes.

The same yere the Turkes army entred into Hungarie spoyling and robbing as faire as Zagabria. and carried away with them 10000 Prisoners.

In the same yere also they inuaded Dalmatia, Foruli, and Styria, and baried great booties of men and Cattell.

1471 The King of Portugall, passing the Gadirane Sea, recovered many Cities in the borders of Mauritania from the Turke, and laid them to his owne dominions.

1472 King Vuncassane hauing the vpperhand of the Turke, wonne from them sundry Cities, whereby he purchased

Of Saracens and Turkes. 133

to himselfe a perpetuall fame ouer all the East.

Nicholas Throne the same yere ioynded the Venetian flete with the Armie of the King of Parthia against the Turke.

Vuncassane in a skirmish banquished and put to flight 3000 of the Turkes Army.

The same yere the Turke entring into Hungarie with a maine power, spoyled al the Cities nere the water side.

The Persian King and the Turke ioyning battayle nere to the Ryuer Euphrates: the Turke had the victorie, and tooke of his Enemys 6800 of whom in his retourne homeward at euery staying place and Tent pitching, he commaunded euery day fye hundreth to be cut in peeces with a sword, and then cast them out (like dogs) vnburied, filling all the Countrey of Armenia with this loathsome spectacle of dead Carcasses.

In a part of the Countrey that lyeth by the ryuer Ister called Muldauia and Walachia, the Turkes had an ouerthrow and were slayne by Stephan the Palatine of Muldauia, foure Turkische Bassaes were beere taken and xxxvj. Ensignes.

Matthias King of Hungarie, at the Ryuer of Saue won a strong Foote from the Turkes to his high praise and commendation.

The same yere Capha, a Colonie of the Genowayes in the coast of the Sea Euxine, was by treason deliuered vp to the Turke.

This yere dyed King Vuncassane, who had vnder his gouernment the Persians, Parthians, Medians and almost all the East beside. After whom, succeeded his eldest sonne: who puttyng his other brothers to death, reigned alone.

The same yere the Turkes practyzed much pyracie in Nicosia, to the great blemishing and detriment of that Citie.

A breefe Chronycle

1478

A great multitude of Turkes were overcome in Mysia. The Venetians made league with the Turke: Chalcis was by force of Armes subdued, and Scodra by subtil practyse gotten and persuaded to yelde. They promysed to paye hym yeerely 8000 Crownes, conditionally that their Nauigation and traffique ouer Pontus myght bee open for their Marchauntes as befoze it had bene.

1479

Mahomet sent a great Flaue into Puell, and he himselfe went with an Armie into Hungarie, and brought out of both places a great multitude of Christian Prisoners. And afterward by force subdued the Isles Leucadia, Neritus, Cephalenia and Zacynth.

1480

Mahomet went with an Armie into Egypt to conquer Alexandria and at home made preparation for all things needefull for his expedition to Rhodes, which he nowe minded out of hande to besiege, and had framed his plat which way to attempt it.

1481

This Mahomet by Mesich his Generall (a Bassa) besieged Rhodes, and beate the same with liij. dayes most terribly. But the same was so manfully defended, that hee was fayne to his great reproche and shame to departe and leaue his Siege, which he had there continued lxxxix. dayes, in which while he losse of his men which were slaine out of hande ix. thousande beside xv. thousande which were wounded. The Maister of the Rhodes at this Siege for the Christians was the valiant Peter Dabuson.

The same yeere the Turke with a great Flaue invaded Puell and by Acomaro one of his Capitaines, wanne Otronto, a goodly large and populous Citie standing vpon the Sea, and put all the Inhabitauntes to the sword.

In this yeere also 6000 Turkes were slaine at the Citie Mantinea in the kingdome of Lacedemon.

In

Of Saracens and Turkes. 134

In this yeere also, this raging Helhonde Mahomet the Great Turke, first of all others tooke vpon him the name of Emperour. Hee wanne from the Christians two flourishing and noble Emppies, Constantinople, and Trapezunc, twelue Christian Kingdomes, and CC. cities. After which sundry conquestes he yelbed by his blasphemous soule, and payed his debt to nature, to the great reioyting aswell of his enemies as of his owne people, because of the horrible & inspeakeable crueltie, without respecte aswell to frendes as foes, most rigorously shewed.

Baiazeth the big. Emperour of Turkes, appeasing all civile dissensions and domesticall discorde at home, chased his brother Zizime out of all Turkis, and was himselfe enstalled in the Empire. At the same yeere Ferdinand King of Naples, sent his sonne Alphonsus with an Armie, who recovered from the Turkes the Citie Otronto, before wanne by Mahomet.

Also this yeere Iohn Castriotte the Sonne of Scanderbeg assembled a power and recovered his inheritance that was by force taken from his father by Mahomet. The same yeere also Stephan Yamoda and King Matthias, wanne from the Turke the higher countrey of Mylia, which now is called Bosna. Baiazeth often ioyning battaile with the Sultan of Egypt had the worse, and in the ende was glad to make a league with him.

The Turkes invaded and wanne Valachia. Zizime Brother to this Baiazeth the Great Turke, fleeing an exile in Rhodes whither he fled for feare of his sayd Turke his brother, was this yeere sent to Rome to Pope Innocent the viij. And after a certeyne time of abode there, was paysoned together with Alexander the Pope his Sonne.

For

1482

1483

1484

1488

A breefe Chronycle

- 1490 Ferdinando king of Spaine with x. M. Horsemen and fifty thousand footemen, wan from the Saracen Mozes, the kingdome of Granado, and chased them utterly out of that Countrey beyond the Sea.
- 1492 This Turke Baiazeth with a great power both by Sea and Land inuaded the Inhabitaunts of the Isles in Greece called Ceraunij, and all the free Corporations of Epyro, and them subdued to his Turkish Emppre.
- The same yere Matthias King of Hungary, conquered a strong Holde from the Turkes called Sabatrum, whereby his Countrey lyued in moze quietnesse and out of feare.
- 1493 A mighty Armye was sent into Hungarie vnder the leading of Cadumc Bassa, by whom were slayne vii. M. Hungarians: and for testimony of this spoyle and ouerthow gotten to the Christians, they sent many Christian mens Wives with their noses cut of and in both hands wite disfigured, to Constantinople.
- 1494 The Turkes rushing into Croacia, were put to flight by Maximilian.
- 1498 The Turke warred against the Venetians, spoilinge with fire and swozd the Countrey Dalmacia, & barred away to him great prayes. In Forulij also he commaunded about 4000. men to be beheaded, because he could not carry them away with him by reason of a great deluge of the riuer there. The Citie of Venice for dread of hym was in great perplexitie and feare.
- 1499 The Turkes wanne this yere, Modona and Corona, two cities of Peloponese.
- 1500 The Citie Methon was by the Turkes wonne from the Venetians by force. Laurence Dap Baiazeth commaunded the Byshop of that place to be beheaded in his sight, and killed the Townesmen euery one, and for the most part consumed all the houses with fire. By like

Of Saracens and Turkes. 135

- misfortune also, the sayd Venetians lost Naupactum and Dyrrhachium.
- Certayne Kings & Princes of Christendome, frends and sauors of the Venetian state, ioyned their Maye with the Venetian Flote (ouer the which Benedict Pisaurc was Admirall) and spoyled the Isles of Aegina and Zacynth, inuaded Leucas and Cephalenia, toke the Ile of Neritus (at this day called Saint Maures Ilande) and reskued Nauplia.
- 1501 The Turke greatly fearing his owne state, by reason of the bzte and rumour y went vpo Elias the Propheet of Persia, commaunded about C. C. Houses in Constantinople with all the Inhabitautes therein to be burnt. This Propheet was in such credit and estimation among the People, that about CL. thousande men leaned to his Sect and folowed after hym in Campe. His Tentcs were exceeding rich and gorgeous, and all thinges among them were common.
- 1502 The same yere, the Turke entred into League and concluded peace with the king of Hungary and the Duke of Venice.
- 1504 The King of Spaine in Mauritania Casariensis, wan Maynepost from the Saracenes.
- 1505 The Sophie of Persia, vanquished, chased, and slew the Turkes in Asia.
- 1509 Grane a populous and wealthy citie of Africa this yere was wonne by the Spaniardes.
- 1510 The Spaniardes by force of Armes conquered Bugia in Africa.
- 1511 Zelime youngest Sonne to Baiazeth the great Turke rebelliously and most vnnaturally lay in wayt to kill his olde Father, expelled him out of his kingdome in his olde dayes, with all his Brothers and kinsmen. At length he caused his Brothers and their Childzen to be strangled and

A breefe Chronycle

and by a certayne Jew, whom for that intent he had hired, he caused his sayd father to be poysoned.

1512. This Zelime by the factious election of his disordered Souldiours and affectionate Rakehelles, was chosen and annoyned the ix. Emperoure of Turkes.

1513. Acomathes the brother of Zelime, being ayded by the Persians, warred against his Brother, but Fortune so frowned on him, that he was strangled.

1514. Zelime concluding a peace & renewinge League with the Venetians and Hungarians, made sharpe Warre upon Ismael y^e king of Persia, & him nere to a towne called Chalderan, vanquished and put to flight: And toke Taurum the chiefe Citie of his kingdome (sometime called Artaxata) without any resistance or bloodshed.

1515. Hee waged fresh warres against Aladule Kinge of Cappadocia, and taking his chiefe Capitaine in the chase, cut him thorow by the head, and sent his head to Venice for a Trophie or signe of his victorie.

1516. This bloody Zelime discomfited Campsor the Sultane of Egypt with all his power, and slue the Sultane hymselfe in the chase. And following his good fortune and prosperous successe in this battayle, conquered and annexed to his Emprre, Alkair, and Alexandria two goodly embattelred Cities, and all Egypt beside. He also wanne Damascus, the large and renowned Citie of Syria.

1517. Hee made a passage or a Byrdge of Shippes ouer the riuer Nilus, to the intent hee might pursue and coape with Tomombey the new Sultan of Egypt. Whom by treason hee toke and after all kindes of most cruell tormentes and spightfull contumelies, commanded hym to be hanged.

1518. Charles Kinge of Spayne dyaue out of his Realme the Marranes, which were a remnaunt of the Saracens and slue welnare of the Barbarians. 40000.

1520. Zelime the Great Turke was this yere (as he had well

Of Saracens and Turkes. 136

well deserued) murdered in that place, where before he had mosse vnnaturallie and rebelliously persecuted bys Father. After him succeeded his Sonne Solymán, the xii. Emperour of Turkes.

1521. This Solymán conquered the Citie Belgrade, a mosse strong Buttresse and Garrison for Chritendome, and wan diuers other Castles and strong Holds in Hungary.

1522. He also besieged the Ile of Rhodes with a paue of foure hundred shalpe and a mightie multitude of men. He beganne the siege in the later end of Iune, and toke it upon Christmas day next following to y^e great shame & dishonour of al chritian Princes. The knights of y^e same Ile valyauntly a great while defended it, & often skirmished with hym, but in the ende after many notable overthrowes for want of ayde and power they yelded.

1526. Lewys Kinge of Hungarie desired by his Ambassadors, aid of the Princes of Germany, against the Turke inuading his Countrey and Kingdome, whiche they appointed to sende, but it came to late. For the Turke was already come, wherefore king Lewys in his owne person, leading his whole power against hym, encountered with hym in battayle, wherein hee was overcome, and thinking to haue saued himselfe by flight, was drowned in certayne Bogges or Fennes both Horse and Man. Many worthy Gentlemen in this Battayle were slayne to the great weakeninge of that noble Kingdome. The chiefe Citie of the Realme called Buda, was sacked and spoyled: and the noble Librarie, of Kinge Matthias bitterly consumed with fire.

1529. The knights of the Rhodes planted theselues against the Turkes in the Ile of Malta.

The same yere Solymán came agayne into Hungary, besieged the second time the strong fortresse of Bude, but seeing he could not according to his minde by force win it, he perswaded the Defendauntes by certayne offers and

Do is

conditi-

A breefe Chronycle

conditions to yelde it into his handes. From thence he marched to Vienna a noble Citie of Austrich, and vppon the xxij day of September gy2ded the same about with a most terrible Siege, beate it with D2olynance and shooke the walles with most hydeous noyse of roaring Canons. But thzough the courage of the defendauntes, he lost many of his Souldiours, and being bzought into a bitter despaire of any good successe, he trusted by his trinkets and in flying maner trudge away toward his owne Countrey with all spede that coude be, fearing least the Emperour and other Pzinces had folowed at heeles after him. During this siege, he haried great booties out of y Countrey thereabout, and caryed away many thousande Pzysoners. He cast out young Virgins & auncient Patronesses starke naked, and pitched little Childezen vpon stakes and poales. In his Armie he had a hundzeth and fortye thousand men: whereof (partly in this Siege of Vienna and partly in their flight) perished for famine and colde, the number of. lxxx. thousand. The Citie was most valiantly defended by Philip of Bauary Earle Palatine of the Rhine bzother to the Palsgrauc; a young Gentleman in yeres but of noble courage, with the Lord William Rogendorf and Nicolas Erle of Salme and with them onely xx. M. Almeynes and two M. h2ozslemen. In his iourney, thzough Austrich, the Turke vsed vnspeakeable crueltie, of some he cut of their noses, some he put out their eyes, of some he cut of their pziuy members, of women they cut their pappes, Virgins they rauished, and of women great with childe they rypped their bellies and bzent the childezen: beside this, all along as they went, they bzent Cozne, Trees, Houses and all that was combustible, to make the countrey desolate.

1532

Solyman with CC. M. armed souldiours assaulted the Castle of Guntz in Hungarie, geuing thereto. xij. terrible assaults. Which Castle was valiauntly defended by

Of Saracens and Turkes. 137

by a noble Gentleman named Nicolas Iuryze. At length it was surre2ded vnto him, not as wonne by force, but as yelded by composition. The great Turke himselfe hearing that the Emperour Charles was coming agaynst him wyth. lxxx. thousande footemen and .30000. well appointed h2ozslemen, of Germaines, Italians and Spanyardes, beside the H2ozslemen of Hungarie, thought the Countrey woulde be too boate for hym to staye any longer, and therevppon fledde homewarde thzough the Wyllithe Downes of Norica and wyth great booties returned home, wythout doyng any thing wo2thy of memozie.

Solyman yet againe meant to haue an other flinge at Hungarie, and to scourge the Kingdomes of Africa. Wherevppon he sent one Corradine Barbarossa Capitayne of his Naue into Africa agaynst the King of Tunicc. Whom he dzaue out of his Kingdome, and deposed from hys Crowne. And into Hungarie he sent Lewys Gricce, Bastard sonne of Andrew Grytte Duke of Venyce, to expulse and dzyue out thence Vaiuode. But Meilane Vaiuode wyninge the Cytye of Medeuisch, which the saide Lewys Grytte before had gotte into hys possession, slew both hym and all his Armie: And cutte hys Childezen into pieces, before they fathers eyes.

1534

Charles the fift with a great Naue sailed into Africa, and restozed the king of Tunicc to his Crowne againe, and deliuered out of miserable captiuitie about the number of. xx. thousand Chzistian Pzisoners.

1535

The same yere Taurus a Citie of Persia was taken by the Turke. Where the Turkishe Souldiours luyng in carelesse securitie, were sodainly set vpon by Tahames king of Persia, and. xx. thousande of them slayne. The Persians caryed thence manye spoyle and the Great Turkes

D. 14.

A breefe Chronicle.

Turkes Concubines, to the great shame and reproche of their Enemies.

1537 Solyman assembled out of the Countreyes of Pontus & Propontis, C. l. Gallies. lxxx. Brigandines, & Foytes, and CC. lxx other vessels of diuers sortes wherewith he invaded Corfica an Ile belonging to the Seigniozie of Venice, and it besieged the space of .x. dayes. Then setting the Suburbes on fier, & making great spoyle of the countrey beside killing or else taking Prisoners, many of the Inhabitauntes, he departed thence, and wasted the Ile of Zacynth and Cythera. Hee conquered and layde euen with the grounde, the Ile of Agina, subdued Paros, and make Naxos Tributarie. He sent into Puell, the greater and better part of his Flaue, which were in number ten thousand picked souldiers and 99. of his stoutest Bozemen, which harped and spoyled all the Coast of the Myrrhene Sea. The flæte of the Emperour, the Pope, and Venetians toyning together at the first, through discorde and ambition of the Captaines among themselves were disseuered and scattered a sunder.

1538 Inuasion and Roades were made into Styria by the Martyloys, a rude sort of Heynautly Lurdens, altogether geuen to Wyllery and Theft: but by the valiantnesse of the Countrey Inhabitauntes they were repulled.

The same yere throughte Treason of Duke Calcian the Christians had an ouerthrowe at the handes of the Turkes in Sauia.

1539 The Venetians entred a Truce with the Turke, by paying vnto him thre hundzeth thousand Crownes, and yelding vp into his handes the Townes of Neapolis and Maluasia in the borders of Macedonia.

1540 The Towne of Newcastle in Dalmatia (wherein was a Garrison of Spanyshe and Germaine Souldiours) was this yere conquered and sacked by the Turkes and all the Inhabitauntes and Souldiours therein (according

Of Saracens and Turkes. 138

ding to their vsuall custome) put to the sword. The Venetians all this while wynted at the matter, in whom it lay to haue holpen this outrage.

1541 After the death of Iohn Vaiuoda, who committed the ouersight and tutorship of his young Sonne to his Cousen Georgius Monachus, it chaunced y Ferdinandus leued an Army to recouer his Landes & right in Hungarie. Whō Monachus in the behalfe of the Infant resisted. At length the matter betwene them beyng bzought to a Warle and conuention, for the quieting of all stryfe, it happened among Ferdinandus his men, sodainely a Dagge to be hard goe of, which by the heate of the daie (as it is thoughte) discharged of it owne accorde. But Monachus iudging that it was shotte at him, charged Ferdinandus with great iniurie, saying that from that time, he woulde neuer beleue the promyes of Christians. And vppon thys rathe suspicion, sent to the Turke, desiring hym to come into Hungarie with hys power to ayde him, who glad to haue this occasion, came speedely with a great Army and discharging the Hoaste of Ferdinandus from the Siege of Buda, serged the Cytie into hys owne handes and to hys owne vse, commaunding the young Infant and his mother to folowe after his Campe. Then entred he himselfe and tooke possession of the Castle, and waime also Pestum a Citie ryght ouer agaynst Buda, well stored wyth Ordnance and Munition. At the same time he also won Stridon, and the Towne called Quinquerclesix or Fynffenkyrken he raled and made leauell with the grounde.

At the wynterage of Buda, two Ensignes yeldinge themselves to the Turke vppon promyse of lyfe and limme, were first by him commaunded to put of their Armour, the to put it on again, & to ranke themselves in battaille aray, after the Christian fashon which they readily accomplishing according to his comaundment, & he riding about the

the bankes to view and behold them, at length hadd them put of their Armure againe: whiche done, certaine of the tallest and strongest he picked out, the residue he commaunded his Souldiours comminge behinde, to helpe in peeces with their Swozdes. Of the other which he had chosen out, some he set for Parks, or Buttes to be shot at: and some he appointed to his two Sonnes to slawe with their Falchions, and to trye their strength, whether of them coulde geue the deeper wounde, or (as they feared it) strike the sayzer blowe, that most blood might flow and gush out of their bodies.

1542.

Ioachim Marques of Brandeburge Prince Electour, was appoynted with a great power to goe into Hungarie to recouer Buda and other peeces from the Turke. At the first, he seemed so forward and couragious, as though he woulde haue conquered the whole world. But his great heate in shorte space so flaked that he was full glad to be discharged of his office againe, before any wronge were offered him, and with shame ynough returned home agayne. Whose cowardise the Turkes perceiuing, thought to shew hym some cast of their office before his departure, and set vpon the right winge of his Armye, and thence took 500. Duchmen prisoners. Whom in derision they horribly mangled and disfigured: and so sent them thzough Grecia to bee witnesses of their victorie. The kinde of their punishment was this: first, they thrust them cleane thzough the right Arme, with an yron redde hoat, to make them euer after vnhabable to labour and warfare, secondly their heades were shauen to the verye Sculles lyke Ponkes or Friers, and thirdly their pryue members were cut of, to make them vnfrutefull for propagation of Childzen. Notwithstandinge Maurice Duke of Saronie in his expedition, shewed himselfe a gentleman of haulte courage and was lyke to haue bene taken prisoner.

Whis

This yere the Emperoure Charles, speeding hymselfe somewhat late in 6 yere with a goodly flauy into Mauritania Cæsariensis against Barbarossa to recouer Argiers, & staying (as some say) somewhat long at Luke, to conferre wth the Pope, by force of tempest & contrary Windes, suffered a lamentable shipwreck, and losse a great number of his goodly Shippes with the Ordnance and Habylliments of Warre that were within them. The Emperoure himselfe by force of weather was cast vpon the Balear Islands. In this expedition the Germanes valiantly quitte themselves in skirmish against the Barbarians in the Emperours behalfe, but the Italians recyled and fled back.

1542

Truce was for a certeyne time taken with the Turke which to both parties with longe warres wearied, was welcome and very acceptable.

1543

Sigismund King of Poleland, by Breuitz one of his Capitaynes, conquered and rased a stronge Fortresse which the Turke had buylt nere to the Marches of his Realme and Kingdome.

1546

Mustapha the Turkes eldest Sonne, thought he tarped too longe, if he shoulde be kept from the Crowne tyll his father were dead, wherefore he incensed the Egiptians to take part with him, and stirred vp the Persians to make sharpe Warre vpon Solyman his father.

1547

Solyman the Turke with a huge army, marched against Tolcha King of Persia, where the Turke in battayle had a great ouerthrow and lost many of his men in Persia. The Tartarians which were comminge to ioyne their powers with him for his defence, were slayne and spoyled in the lesse Armenia.

1548

The same yere, one Curculey a Turkische Pryate with twenty Galleyes and Foystes, contrarye to the League and truce prattized muche Pryacie and rouerge about the Coastes of Sicilie and Campania, sodaynlye

pp

sur

A breefe Chronicle

surprizinge the Inbabyte, and thence caried away incredible spoyle.

1548. The same yere the Saracenes in Barbaria buyng newe sedicious byzozes, were by the valyauntnesse of Seltian and Albane two of the Emperours Capitaines repressed: who also delyuered Portugall and Spaine from their malicious inuasion.

1549. The Turke intending to make amendes for the late ignomynie and foyle that he had receiued, leuyed a newe Armye againste the Persians: and firste, he inoyted his Souldiours by augmenting their wages, and after ward, by his Ambassadors, insinuated himselfe to all his confederates and confirmed such Leagues as were betwene them. But he lost of this is very well appoynted Armye in this iourney by famine and plague a great multytude. The plague also beinge very boate and raiginge in Constantinople (which Citie in his absence, he had strengthned with a Garrison of a hundzeth Galleyes) consumed well neere lxx. thousand persons.

1550. In the beginning of this yere, (whiche was a yere of Iubylie) Solyman was repozted (but vntruelye) to bee dead: which mercilesse Tyraunt soze afflicted the people of God, the space of xxx. yeres.

The same yere the Emperoure Charles the fift, by the Viceroy of Sicile, conquered and won the Citie Africa, from whence he brought 8000 prisoners, and brake out the Archpyzate Dragute, King therof, who fled to the Turke.

1551. The Turkes after they had in vaine for a time besieged the Castle of Malca, toke the Citie of Tripplisa Pozte of Barbarie.

1553. Solyman at this time caused his eldest Sonne Mustapha to be strangled wth a Bowstringe, by his dumbe men ministers of Murthor & vijured, he himself being present and looking on, for suspicion of treason layd to his charge.

And

Of Saracens aud Turkes 140

And there was a truce taken betwene hym and Ferdinando king of Romanes.

After which ad committed, he woulde haue geuen to another of his sonnes named Gianger, the Treasure, boyle, Armour Ornament and Prouince of his layne Brother: but Gianger for very sorowle of his Brothers death raging against his Father, calling hym wycked dog, traitor and murderer, and bidding pby vpon him, refused his offers and drawinge out his owne Dagger presently thrust himselfe through the body and dyed.

The Turkes Army came into Styria, and wanne the townes of Coppia, Capenisuar, and Baboza. And attempting to winne Sigetum, they could not with all their power bying it to passe. Whereupon they departed homeward, but first, they spered Baboza, Sanmartine, Gerofgall, Selia, San Laurence and Caliang.

Philip Kinge of Spaigne furnished out an Flaue to conquere Tripolis, the Ile Gerbe: which Flaue arguing in Gerbe and ioyninge battaile with the Turkes, was put to a shewle after deale & ouerthrow. For there were slaine of them out of hande to the number of xliiij. thousande persons. The Turkes in this confide toke xliiij. Galleyes, one Foyst of fortye, and fouretene great Hulkes.

In the beginning of the same yere the Turkes wanne a strong Holde in Hungary named Filech: and afterwarde a Truce was taken betwene the Emperour Ferdinando and Solyman the great Turke so long as Ferdinando lyued.

The great Turke, sent his Ambassadour to Ferdinando, who from the great Turke his Paister presented vnto the said Emperour a godly Venet richlye trapped and 4. Camelles with sundrye Chistian Prisoners.

Maximilian now Emperoure, by the Lord Lazarus Swendy his Generall, conquered & beat downe a strong holde

1556.

1560.

1564.

A breefe Chronycle

bolde & Fort called Tohay, belonging to Iohn Vaiuoda which was eigerly defended by the Turkes.

1564 King Philip sent Garzias Captaine of his Gallies and Admirall of those Seas with a goodly Flaue to wyne a stronge Castle belonging to the Turkes called Del Peuol de Velez, standing vpon the coast of Africa, from whence Turkish Pyrates were often wont to infest the Spanishe Seas and take luche as traouiled that waye. Which in .viij. dayes they toke, for that y^e Turkes defending it, in the still time of the night fled away.

1565 Solyman besieged the Ile of Malta, wonne the Castle of S. Helme, but not able to winne the rest, he left all and departed with great losse of his men.

1566 Solyman with a huge power entred into Hungarie, and besieged Sigeth and Iula. And there dyed, the .iiij. of September, leauing behinde him for Heire to all his dominions and Kingdomes, his sonne Selyme, now Emperour of Turkes. Whose tyrannie and rage God for his mercyes sake, inhibite and qualesse, that he vse not his power to the destruction and ouerthrowe of Christendome, which with ciuile discorde within it selfe is at this present piteously rent asunder and most dangerously dismembred. In this Siege the rather to allure his Souldiours to ballaunt enterprises, he made Proclamation, that whosoener brought to him or to his Sonne the late Mechmet Bassa the head of a Sygethian Souldiour should haue in reward .x. Duckattes, and after that rate accordingly for so many heades as they brought. Beside diuerse other causes y^e vehemently moued him to conquare this strong piece, this was one, & none of the leaste, for one of the Turkes Captains named Begen comming out of Turke toward Fynsenkyrken or Quinquetclix into Hungarie with .1000. freshe Horsesmen, was encountred by the Erle Seryne Captaine of Sygeth in the night, who toke from him 8 Camels .50. Myles 60 Horses, and five Wagons laden with Treasure and also gotte y^e redde

Of Saracens and Turkes. 141

y^e redde Gypsons, with a whole piece of riche clothe of Golde, and a goodly Jewell. This Captaines Horse was betrapped most richly. The Pomell of the Saddle & backe part was couered ouer with plate of fyne Arabische work, and the rest of the saddle beside the sitting place was plated with Silver and gilt. The Seate of the Saddle was couered with purple Weluet, the Trappers and bydle beset with small Turkeys and Rubyes. Which horse and furniture, was sent by Earle Seryne to the Emperour to Vienna. The Captaine Begen (although the Erle Seryne would faine haue saued him and taken him aliue, yet because the Ianitzaries fought so eigerly to deliuer him, he was forced to kill both him and them. From this Begen, the Erle got .xv. thousand Turkishe & Hungarish Duckates, which should haue payd the Turkishe Souldiours in Fynsenkyrken.

This ballaunt Gentleman at the Siege of this Fortresse was slaine, whose death greatly discoraged all his company. The Turke himselfe although he dyed in the Campe at this Siege, certaine dayes before the Fortresse were taken, yet by the subtile pollicie and wonderfull silence of Mechmet Bassa his Sonne in lawe, his death was kept secrete and vnknown till the Hold was taken for discoraging his Souldiours. Insomuch that the sayde Mechmet Bassa, priniely caused Solymans Doctour of Physicke to be executed and put to death, least he should haue blabbed out his death. At this Siege were slaine thre or foure Bassaes & 18000. Turkes.

The Arabians and certeyne other Countreyes began in the beginning of the raigne of this Selyme to rebell against him, whom he quickly appeased & brought vnder obedience. And made a league wyth the King of Persia.

After this, although he the Turke had entred in league with the Venetians, yet now laying title & challenge to y^e Ile of Cypres, he sent his Ambassadour to Venice state-ly and

1567

1570

A breefe Chronycle

ly and malapertly to demaund surrendry of the same vnto him. Which saucy request being not graunted, he contrary to league, othe, & promise, first sent out Hali Bassa with 80 Gallies thither to transport Souldiours, Munition, freshe victuall & other necessaryes. Then were appointed as chiefe Generalles two Lordes of his Princiue Council, Mustapha Bassa, and Piali Bassa, whiche with their maynt power landing in Cypres first wonne the Citie Nicosia but not without greate slaughter and effusion of bloude on both partes.

1571

The Citie Famagosta was most terrible besieged and fire times cruelly assaulted and righte ballauntly by the Chyistians defended so long as their power, victuall, powder and shot remayned. But the want of these thinges & the state of their Maymures being by Canon shot beaten downe & perished, caused the right ballaunt & honorable Sig. Bragadino Lord Gouvernoꝝ of the Citie & others of y^e Venetian Nobilitie there, to yeld by theselues and y^e Citie vpon some honorable condicions. That is to wit, that they might depart with their lynes Armour & goods, five pieces of Ordnance, three of their best Horses and safe passage from thence to Candye with theyꝝ owne Gallies: and last of all that the Grecians inhabiting in that Island, might dwell there quietly and enjoy their goods and possessions peaceably and still retye their Chyistian Religion without either hurt or contradiction. Al these requests and Articles, Mustapha the Turkish Generall graunted and subscribed vnto with his owne hand, but the cursed Caytif spake one thing with mouth & thought another in heart, for the 15 of August, the said Sig. Bragadino (vpon trust of this Bassa his promise) accompanied with sundry other Lordes Gentlemen and Souldiours came forth of their Holde and went vnto the Pavillion of Mustapha, with the keyes of the Citie: of whom at the first they were curteously enterteyned and caused to sit downe by

Of Saracens and Turkes. 142

by him, discoursing with them of sundry matters and drawing them fro one tale to another, till at length picking a surmyed quarel and specially to Sig. Bragadino sodainly commaunded them all to be pynnyed and to be layde bounde one by one in the market place, and in hys presence there to be helwen in peces. As for Sig. Bragadino, he first commaunded his eares to be cut of, and most vilely to be stretched a long vpon the grounde, while Mustapha talked and blasphemously demaunded of him, where his Chyist was that he helped him no better. Then he led him to all the breaches of the Citie, making him to carie at once two baskettes of rubbish and earth, th^e one on hys backe and th^e other in his hand namelyke to euery sundry battry, being enforced also and commaunded to kysse the grounde as often as he passed by him. After this, he was ledde to the Sea side where being set in a Chayze, he was lynched vp and fastened to the maineyard of a Galley, and hoysed vp with a Crane so high that al the Chyistian Souldiours and Slaves in the Haven alreadye shipped might behold, and was after ward let downe againe, and vpon the Wyllowie in the market place most cruelly fleyed quicke. After which most sauage tyrante, his skynne was stuffed with straw and hanged vpon the Wolsperit of a forst to be caried along the coastes of Syria, that al y^e Port towne might behold and vnderstand who he was. The Turkish Army at this Siege of all sortes were in number 200 thousande persons. In 79 dayes (all which time the Battry still continued) 140 thousande yron pelletes were shot into the Citie, numbred and sene.

The Chyistian Army being in number 207 Gallies, 6 Galeazes beside a great nuber of Pyrnettes and other Shippes, and 20. thousande tall Souldiours, of Spayne, Italy and Germanie beside the Labourers and Rowers, wherof was chiefe General Don Iohn de Austria toke the Sea at Mellana from thence sayling to Cortyra, & so

1571

A breefe Chronicle.

to Cephalenia seeking the Turkes: where being out of Candy enformed of the miserable taking and cruell dealing at Famagosta, were further genen to vnderstande, that the Turkes lay at Anker in the Gulph of Velapant. Spreading themselues thitherward, the Turkes were in a toly ruste, marueilling that the Christians durste so fondly hazard themselues vnto certayne death, and making full reckenyng so to afflict and crush the Christian power at that time, that they should neuer be able afterwarde to withstand the more. But they reckened before their Host, and God gaue the victorie. For there were taken, burnt, and sunk of the Turkish Gallies, Gallots and Byggandines 230. There were slayne of the Turkes 30. thousand, beside a great number taken prisoners: and about xiiii. thousand Christians that had bene kept in lothsome captiuitie, were set at libertie, by making their chaynes to be reuenged of their extreme flangerie, to helpe the Christians when the Turkish side began to goe to wreck. The chiefe byunt of this conflict was vpon the 6. day of October, and lasted foure houres, but the slaughter and chase continued all day from morning tyll night, insomuch that the Sea seemed reddy with blood: for none escaped thence alieue saving 40. Gallies which fled at the first beginning. The Christians lost seauen Gallies and were slayne betwene the number of bi. 02. thousande.

The wind and Sunne was on the backs of the Christians, and full in the faces of the Turkes, whiche greatlye helped them at this pinch, and furthermore the Stemmes of the Turkes Gallies were so high, that they ouerhotte our men, which made them to batten to grappling: there beside a great sort of Ianyzaries and comyn Turkes, their Bassa was slaine.

This yere the seauenth of October, the noble and valgaunt Prince Don Iohn De Austria with 105 Gallies and 40. great Shippes was sent by Philip King of Spayne

Of Saracens aud Turkes 143

Spayne to take and set order in the kingdome of Tunicc, where was great ruffling and hurlyburly for the State. He therfore taking Ship at Iauagnana, had the wynd so fauorable, that by none the next day he arriued at Collecta. Afterward there folowed and came to him Marcellus Auria with 29. well trimmed Foyles, and the Duke of Scissia with 14. of the Popes gallies. The Turkes in Tunicc for dread of his puissance (whom to their cost not long before they had tryed) fled out of Tunicc, some to Caruana and 400. of them to Bisana, sometime called Vtica: whom the Bisanes would not receiue nor succour: wherupon after many boat wordes on either party, they fell together by the eares among themselues. The Bisanes (to be the stronger in that byckeringe) vnclogged and vnchayned 150. Christian Prisoners whom the Turkes had vsed for Galley Slaves, and them furnished with Weapon and armure. By whole help and meane specially, the Bisanes got the vpperhande and slue many of the Turkes. Which done, Don Iohn (hauing the goodwyl of the Townesmen) sent thither Sig. Salazara the Spaniarde, to take possession of the Towne, and to sweare the Inhabitauntes to be true obedient Subiectes to Kinge Philip. When landing his Army within foure miles of Tunicc, he sent 2500. Footemen to the citie, where they found no body to resist them but onely 200 Moores in the Castle, who sayde that they kept the same to the vse of Amidas their Kinge. Whom Don Iohn sent Prisoner with his Wife and Children into Sicile, because he had bene cause of great discorde and sacion in that Countrie, and (dispossessing the lawfull heyres thereof) had violently usurped the same and procured the Turkes to come thither. In whose roome he appoynted young Mulcastes, who swore to be true Vassall vnto Kinge Philip and to holde his Crowne of hym by Homage, whom the Citizens with a goodly peale of Ordnance receiued gladlye

A breefe Chronicle

1574. Ipe seemed to admit for their Soueraigne. Ouer the Castle of chiefe Fort of the Citie he appoynted Sig. Serbellane Captaine.

The iij. of February 200 footemen and 150 Horsemen of the Garrison of the sayd Sig. Serbellane, looking also unto the for helpe 4000 Moors, yssued out of their Fort and encountred with 1500 Turkes and 3000 Arabians, which robbed and spoyled the goods of the Munitians and greuously molested them. In which conflict, the falsehearted Moors revolting and refusing to fight, there was taken 150 Christians and two Canones.

Still the Turkes stamping and staring for rage to see the Spaniards beare rule and authoritie in those quarters, priuely in the night the 21 of February surprised Canisum, killing therein and slaying about a thousand persons, and after they had utterly burnt the towne even to the Castle gate, they retorted backe whence they came. The Garrison in the Castle to the great griefe all this while beholding this outrageous dealing, durst not once aduenture to cope with them for feare of losing all, because they were in number farre fewer then they.

This yere the Venetians entred into league with Selyme the Great Turke, for confirmation wherof, they sent Sig. Francesco Barbaro to Constantinople, & conditions wherof were, & eyther partie should stil keepe & enjoy so much as they had already in their several possessions, saving that the Venetians promised the delivery of Sapotum and resignation of all their title in the Porte of xemenicum into the Turkes handes: and againe, & Turke resigned and graunted unto them, two miles every way about the Territoire of Zara and other their Jurisdictions therabout, and that the Venetians for Dalmatia and retyene other peeces about Zara, should yearly answere on certayne tribute to the said Turke.

In

Of Saracens and Turkes. 144

In March this yere the Moores whom Don Iohn de Austria permitted upon their humble sute still to inhabit in Tuncy, by the egging and procurement of Radamane Viceroy of Algiera, entred into conspyacie and denise, how to surpryse and winne the new Fort that the Spaniards had there lately made, against whom Salazara was commaunded by Sig. Serbellane to go with a thousand footemen, which put the Moorish Judges to flight, and slue of them 1200.

Three Shippes were sent to Charles the ix. Kinge of Fraunce, laden with great Horses, Lyons, Lyberds, and other Presents. Which colourable curtessie vnder the cloake of glossing flatterie, it is thought the Turke used, the rather to obteyne the Kinges goodwill and consent that he might winter his Gallies in the Port Colonensis. But hearing that the King was departed this lyfe before their coming, one of them returned to Constantinople with speede, to intimate to the Turke their Master, the French Kinges death, and further to know his pleasure what they should doe.

In June the Emperour and the Turke concluded a peace for five yeres to come.

In Iulie, 300 Turkes landing in Calabria to fetch fresh water and filch some other booties, were snatched by every one and either slaine or taken.

Upon the Seas about Tuncy were seene 350 Saile of the Turkes, whose intent and meaning was (as very shortly after they brought it to passe) to recouer and wyne the new Fort which Sarraglion builded, together with Goletta and other places there. With whom also a mighty rabblement of traiterous Moors about Algiera, Tripolis & Zerbite toynd side: which dispossessed thence the Spanish garrisons, to the great furtherance of their deuillish purposes and to the lamentable griefe of all Christendome, considering what a small way they haue from

A breefe Chronycle

from thence into Spaine & so into the rest of other Chri-
tian Realmes, vnlesse the good and gracious prouidence
of our God qualesse and as with a Snaffle reine this
raging Beaste and bloudy Tyraunt, the common
robber of all the world from further inuasion,
which he graciously graunt for his mer-
cy sake thzough the mediation of
his Sonne Christ our Lord
and onely Sauour
Amen.

FINIS.



PRINTED AT
London by William How, for
Abraham Weale, dwelling in
Paules Churchyard, at the signe
of the Lambe.

1575.